OPEL COMBO

Owner's Manual



OPEL

Table Of Contents

Introduction.....2

Getting to know your vehicle..... 4

Dashboard Instruments And Control..... 77

Infotainment system 106

Starting & Operating..... 133

Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS) 170

In case of emergency..... 213

Maintenance and vehicle care.....230

Technical specifications.....257

Customer information 279

Introduction

Introducion.....2
Link to Company App and Website 2
How To Use This Manual 2
Symbols keys 3
Safety Messages 3
Propulsion types 3
Internal combustion engine vehicle (ICE).....3
Battery electric vehicle (BEV).....3

Introducion

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.
This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.
Additionally, video tutorials for some vehicle functions can be viewed in the Info Display.
Some functions are only operational when ignition is switched on, when combustion engine is running or when electric engine is ready.
Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury that may result from improper use of the vehicle.
You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.
Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.
When this Owner manual l refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Opel Service Partner.
The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

Vehicle specific data

Refer to the sections "Service and maintenance", "Technical data", the vehicle's identification plate and national registration documents.

Link to Company App and Website

Installation of the app with the following QR code:

GET IT ON Google Play

Download on the App Store

How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**

- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labeling are written in bold letters.

Symbols Keys



Location of equipment/ button indicated using a black area

This key allows you to identify the special features of your vehicle:



Van



Crew cab



5 seats



7 seats

Safety Messages

⚠ Danger

Text marked **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Propulsion types

Internal Combustion Engine Vehicle (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an internal combustion engine - diesel or petrol - only.

Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV)

A BEV is propelled by an electric engine only.The high voltage battery is charged using a charging cable and additionally by engine braking.

Getting to know your vehicle

Keys 5
Keys 5
Radio Remote Control Function 6
Electronic key system 6
Central locking system 7
Battery Replacement 10
Audible Pedestrian Warning System 11
Vehicle security 11
Anti-theft locking system 11
Anti-theft alarm system 11
Immobilizer 14
Doors 14
Automatic Door Locks 14
Rear doors 14
Rear Doors Child Locks 16
Sliding Door Operation 17
Tailgate Operation 18
Windows 19
Power windows 19
Rear windows 20
Heated rear window 21
Windscreen 21
Sun visors 22
Mirrors 22
Power Outside Mirrors 22
Folding mirrors 22
Heated mirrors 23
Convex shape 23
Inside Rearview Mirror 23
Rearview Display Mirror 23
Child surveillance mirror 24
Head Restraints Position 24
Position 24
Adjustment 24
Seats 25
Front Seat Position 25
Manual Front Seats 25
Heated Seats 27
Folding Front Seats 27
Front Armrest 28
Rear Seat Position 29
Folding Rear Seats 29
Seat belts introduction 32
Front seat belts 33
Rear seat belts 33
Three-point seat belt 34
Fasten 34
Unfasten 34
Centre seat belt of the second seat row 34
Using seat belts while pregnant 35
Seat belt pretensioners 35
Airbag system introduction 35
Front Airbag system 36
Lateral Airbags 37
Curtain Airbags 37
Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation 38
Child restraints 39
Child restraints introduction 39
Three-points seat belts 40
Isofix Anchorage Connectors 40
i-Size Child Seats 41
Child restraint installation locations 42
Steering Wheel 50
Steering wheel adjustment 50
Steering wheel controls 50
Steering wheel mounted paddle shifters 50
Heated steering wheel 50
Horn 50
Ignition Switch 51
Ignition switch positions 51
Power button 51
Wipers and washers 51
Windscreen Wiper And Washer 51
Rear window wiper and washer 53
Special position of the windscreen wipers 54
Exterior lights 54
Lighting controls 54
High beam 55
Low Beam/High Beam 55
Headlight Height Adjustment 55
Turn lights 56
Emergency Signals 57
Automatic light control 57
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting 57
Front Fog Lights 58
Rear Fog Lights 58
Parking lights 58
Reverse Lights 59

Daytime Running Lights 59
Matrix-LED headlights 59
Interior lighting 60
Courtesy Lights 60
Reading lights 61
Instrument panel illumination control..... 61
Sunvisor lights..... 61
SunRoof 61
SunRoof..... 61
Interior features 62
Glove Compartment 62
Cupholders 62
Center Console Compartment..... 63
Front storage 63
Seatback Storage 63
12V Power Outlets 64
USB Ports 64
Footwell storage..... 65
Load compartment 65
Load compartment grille..... 71
Overhead console 74
Inductive charging 74
Cigarette lighter 76
Outside temperature 76
Ashtrays 76

Keys

Keys

Caution

The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

Caution

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

Replacement keys

The key number is specified on a detachable tag.
The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.
The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.

Key with foldaway key section

⚠ Warning

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.



Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

Radio Remote Control Function



Locking the vehicle

Unlocking the vehicle

Remote lighting of the lights

Locking/unlocking the loading area

Depending on the version, the radio remote control enables a operation of the following functions:

- central locking system
- anti-theft locking system
- anti-theft alarm system
- tailgate unlocking
- power windows
- mirrors folding
- vehicle locator lighting

The remote control has a range of up to several meters, but may also be much less due to external influences.
The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.
Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Tip

The electronic components inside the key fob may be damaged if the key fob is subjected to strong shocks.
In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key fob, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

Electronic Key System

⚠ Warning

The electronic key can affect pacemakers.

Keep the electronic key away from your chest.



Depending on the version, the electronic key system enables a key-less operation of the following functions:

- central locking system
- tailgate unlocking
- ignition switching on and starting the engine
- headlight activation

The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.
Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control
Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Note

To save battery power, the key-less functions are set to stand-by after 21 days of non-use. To reactivate

the functions, press a button on the electronic key.

Replacing battery in electronic key

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. Remove the cover.
2. Extract the flat battery from its location.
3. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Clip the cover in place.

Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in electronic key.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the electronic key.

Central Locking System

Unlocks/locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.
A pull on an interior door handle unlocks and opens the respective door.

Note
In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Note
A short time after unlocking with the remote control the doors are locked automatically if no door has been opened. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

Selective unlocking of cabin and load compartment





Selective unlocking allows you to unlock either the doors of the cabin and the fuel filler flap or the load compartment, i.e., sliding doors, rear door / tailgate. Selective unlocking has to be configured.



To activate, switch on the ignition and then press more than two seconds. The LED illuminates.
An audible signal is given and depending on the configuration of the vehicle, a message is displayed in Info Display.
To deactivate, switch on the ignition and then press for more than two seconds. The LED extinguishes.

Selective unlocking/locking

Unlocking



Press .
Unlocking mode can be set. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors and load compartment will be unlocked by pressing .
- passenger door will be unlocked by pressing .

Unlocking the load compartment

Press or press two times to unlock the load compartment only, i.e., sliding doors and rear doors or tailgate.

Locking

Close doors and the load compartment.
Press .

Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

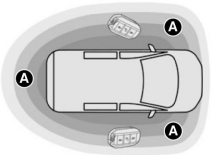
Electronic key system operation

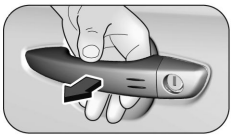
This system allows automatic vehicle locking and unlocking simply by detection of the electronic key. The electronic key must be outside the vehicle.

Note
If the vehicle is not closed properly or the electronic key remains in the vehicle, locking will not be permitted.
If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, a warning chime sounds after a few seconds.

Note
The electronic key may not operate if placed close to electronic devices such as mobile phones or laptop computers.

Note
The separation of the **cabin** and **loading area** unlocking is a security measure.
It is used to lock out access to the part of the vehicle in which you are not present.





The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.

Unlocking



Note
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.
Pass a hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors or the rear door

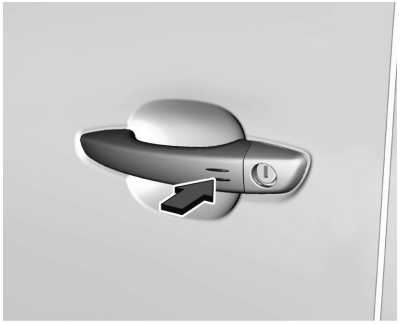
to unlock the vehicle or press the middle tailgate button.
Keep the hand behind the door handle or keep the tailgate button pressed to open the windows.
Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind one of the front door handles or the handle of the rear door. If the vehicle is equipped with a tailgate, press the tailgate button.
- Only the front doors and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind one of front door handles.

Unlocking the load compartment

Only the load compartment, i.e., the rear door or the tailgate, will be unlocked by passing a hand behind the rear door handle or pressing the tailgate button.

Locking



Press with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings) or press the tailgate button.
All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be locked.
If the vehicle is not closed properly, the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted.

Confirmation

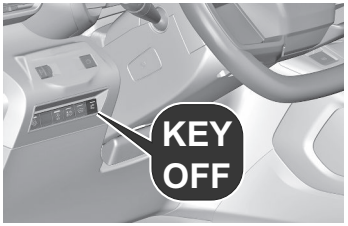
Operation of central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers.

Key off mode
vehicle while leaving the engine running without the electronic key being inside the vehicle.
This mode enables electrical devices to remain operational, ensuring thermal comfort, vehicle security and the operation of essential vehicle systems.

Activation / deactivation

Press KEY OFF to activate (indicator lamp comes on)/deactivate (indicator lamp goes off).

Central locking button



Caution
With an electric motor, this mode remains active for about 10 minutes after the vehicle is locked.

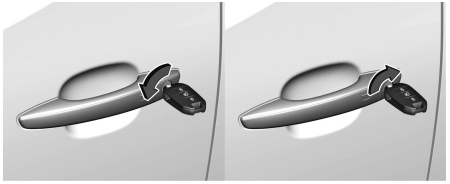
Locks or unlocks all doors and the load compartment from inside the passenger compartment. If the vehicle is equipped with electronic key system, the fuel filler flap is locked or unlocked, too.



Press to lock (indicator lamp comes on) /unlock (indicator lamp goes off).

Operation with the key in case of a central locking system fault

In case of a fault, e.g. vehicle battery or remote control / electronic key battery is discharged, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.



Manual unlocking

Electronic key: press and hold the latch to extract the integral key. Manually unlock the driver's door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder.
With working central locking system the vehicle will be unlocked.
Without a working central locking system, the other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle.
The load compartment and fuel filler flap will possibly not be unlocked.
By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated.

Manual locking

Manually lock the left front door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder. With working central locking system the vehicle will be locked.
To lock the other doors if the central locking system is not working:

- Make sure the child lock is not activated
- Remove the black cover by using a key and turning clockwise.
- Insert key carefully and move to the inner side of the door without turning the key.
- Remove key and attach black cover.

The fuel filler flap and tailgate are possibly not locked.

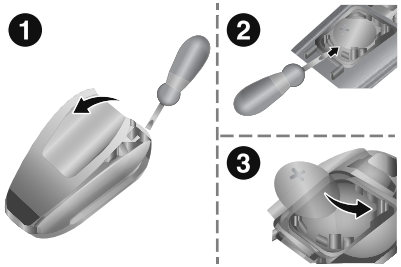
⚠ Warning
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. Remove the back cover from the remote control.
2. Extract the flat battery from its location.
3. Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner. Clip the cover onto the unit. Reinitialize the remote control. For more information on Reinitialising the remote control, refer to the corresponding section.

Fault

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Audible Pedestrian Warning System

The sound of the pedestrian safety alert is generated to indicate the vehicle presence to pedestrians. It is active up to 30 km/h.

Vehicle security

Anti-Theft Locking System

⚠ Warning
Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors.
All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated.
Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.

Activating

Simple key: Insert the key and turn it clockwise twice within 5 seconds.
Remote control: Press N on the radio remote control twice within 5 seconds.
Electronic key: Press twice with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings) within five seconds.

Anti-Theft Alarm System

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the anti-theft locking system.
It monitors:

- doors, tailgate, bonnet
- passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment

Activation

Ignition must be switched off. All doors must be closed and the electronic key must not remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the system cannot be activated.

- Radio remote control: Monitoring of doors, tailgate and bonnet is activated five seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing . Monitoring of passenger compartment including adjoining load

compartment is activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing .

- Electronic key system: Monitoring of doors, tailgate and bonnet is activated 5 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings. Monitoring of passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment is activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings.

Activation is confirmed by the flashing of the status LED and coming on of the turn lights for a short time.
If a door or the tailgate is not correctly closed and the vehicle is locked via remote control or electronic key system, the vehicle remains unlocked. However, the anti-theft alarm system will be activated after 45 seconds.

Note

Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers and open windows, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment



Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Switch of ignition.
2. Press within the next 10 seconds until the LED of the button illuminates constantly.
3. Get out of the vehicle.
4. Lock the vehicle immediately by using the remote control, pressing with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings) or pressing the tailgate button.

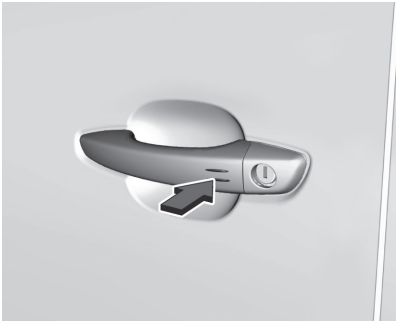
Activation is indicated by the flashing of the status LED.

Indication

LED in the central locking button flashes if the anti-theft alarm system is activated. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

Deactivation

Radio remote control: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.



Electronic key system: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.
The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one meter of the relevant door side.

The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

Note

If the vehicle is unlocked and no door is opened, the vehicle is automatically re-locked after 30 seconds. In this case, the anti-theft alarm will be reactivated, too.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:

- Presence of an occupant or a pet.
- Slightly open window or sunroof.
- Washing the vehicle.
- Changing a wheel.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

1. Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.
2. Get out of the vehicle.
3. Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Key-less Entry and Start" system.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator lamp flashes once every second.

Note

To be taken into account, the deactivation must be carried out every time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

1. Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Key-less Entry and Start" system. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
2. Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Key-less Entry and Start" system. The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Locking the vehicle without activation of the anti-theft alarm

Lock the vehicle by inserting and turning the integrated key of the remote control or the electronic key system in the lock cylinder of the driver's door.

Malfunction of the remote control

Unlock the vehicle by inserting and turning the integrated key of the remote control or the electronic key system in the lock cylinder of the driver's door.
Open the driver's door.
The horn of the anti-theft alarm will sound.
Switch on ignition.
The horn will stop sounding and the status LED extinguishes.

Alarm

When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.
The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing , by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings with electronic key system. The LED of the button will extinguish and the turn lights flash for a short time.
A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the rapid flashing of the LED of the button. If the ignition is switched on, the flashing stops immediately If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the

ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds If the battery has been reconnected (e.g. after maintenance work), wait for 10 minutes to restart the engine.

Immobilizer

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.
The immobilizer is activated automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.

Note
Radio frequency identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

Note
The immobiliser does not lock the doors. Always lock the vehicle after leaving it. Switch on the anti-theft alarm system.

Doors

Automatic Door Locks

Automatic locking after driving off

This system allows automatic locking of the doors and the tailgate as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 10 km/h.

If one of the doors or the tailgate is open, the automatic central locking does not take place. This is signaled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of in the instrument cluster, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.



This function can be activated or deactivated at any time. With the ignition on, press until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.
The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Automatic re-lock after unlocking

This feature automatically locks all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided no door has been opened.

Note
Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.

Rear Doors

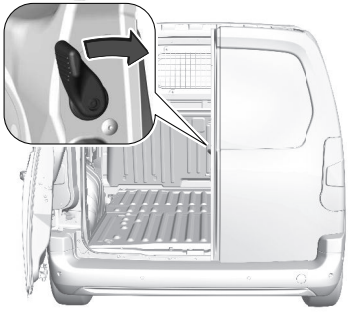
Unlock the rear doors with the remote control or by turning the key in the rear door lock cylinder.
Always open the left hand door before the right hand door.



To open the left hand rear door, pull the exterior handle.



The door is opened from inside the vehicle by pulling the interior handle.



The right hand rear door is released using the lever.

⚠ Warning

The rear lights may be obscured if the rear doors are open and the vehicle is parked on the roadside.
Make other road users aware of the vehicle, by using a warning triangle or other equipment specified in the road traffic regulations.



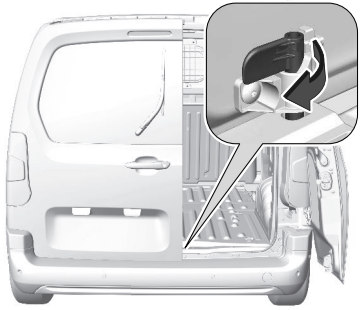
The doors are retained in the 90º position by locking stays. To open the doors to 180º, push the latch and swing open to the desired position.
Before closing the doors ensure that the locking stays are in the 90º position.

⚠ Warning

Ensure extended opening doors are secured when fully opened.
Opened doors may slam closed due to the force of the wind!

Always close the right hand door before the left hand door.

Driving with an open load compartment



In exceptional cases only, it is possible to drive with the right-hand rear door open, e.g. if long objects need to be transported. Open the left-hand followed by the right-hand rear door, then close the left-hand rear door and lock it.

The left-hand door is kept closed by the distinctive "yellow" lock, positioned at the base of the door.

⚠ Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.
When driving with an open load compartment, exhaust gases could enter the vehicle. Open the windows.

Note
Do not use the left-hand rear door to hold objects in place.
If possible, secure objects with lashing straps attached to lashing eyes

Caution

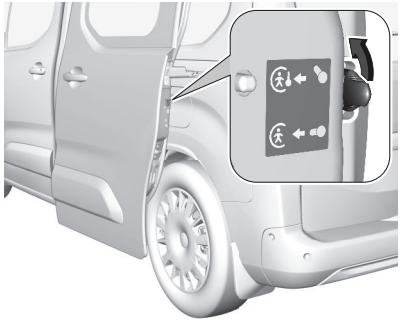
Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed when driving with an open load compartment.
For further information, refer to "Loading information" .
Always comply with local or national regulations.

Rear Doors Child Locks

⚠ Warning

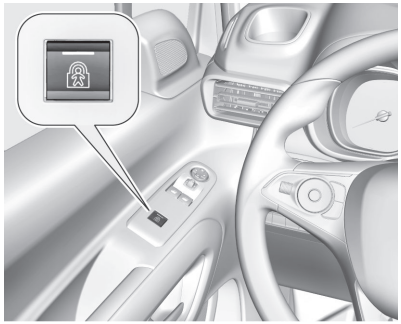
Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Mechanical child locks



Turn the child lock in the rear door to the vertical position. The door cannot be opened from the inside.
To deactivate, turn the child lock to the horizontal position.

Electric child locks



Depending on version, the button may be located in the driver's door or below the light switch.



Remotely operated system to prevent opening of the rear doors via the interior door handles and the use of the rear power windows.

Switching on

Press The indicator light of the button comes on, accompanied by a confirmation message. This indicator light remains on until the child lock is switched off.

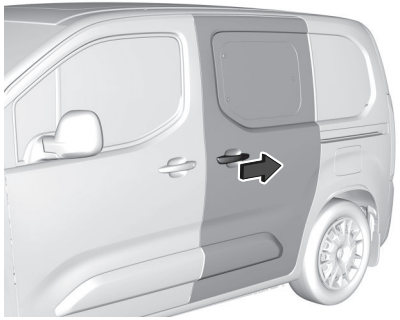
Switching off

Press again. The indicator light on button goes off, accompanied by a confirmation message. This indicator light remains on while child lock is switched on.

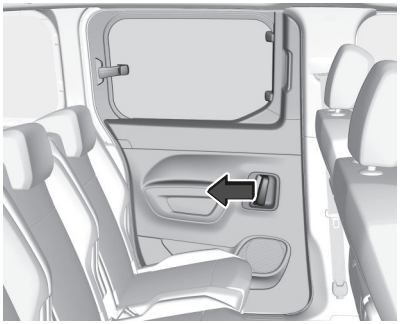
Sliding Door Operation

Opening

After unlocking, pull the outside door handle and slide the door towards the rear beyond the point of resistance.



To open from inside push the handle and slide the door towards the rear beyond the point of resistance.



Closing

To close from outside pull the door handle and slide the door towards the front until it locks.
To close from inside push the handle and slide the door beyond the point of resistance. Then, use the shaped recess at the top of the door pillar to slide the door towards the front until it locks.

⚠ Warning

On a steep slope, the door's weight may cause it to move, opening or closing **suddenly** as a result.

Avoid leaving the vehicle unsupervised on a steep slope with one or more doors open.

Caution

Ensure the sliding side door is fully closed and secure before driving the vehicle.

Caution

To avoid damage, do not attempt to operate the sliding side door when the fuel filler flap is open.

⚠ Danger

Do not drive with the sliding side door open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Doors and door clearances

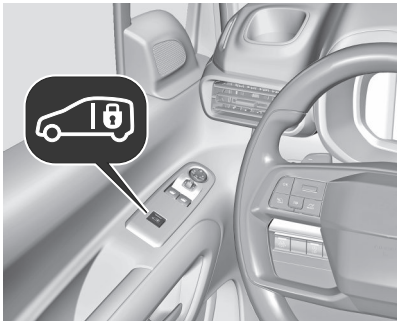
When open, a door projects beyond the body.
Allow adequate clearance when parking alongside walls, lamp-posts, high pavements, etc.

Tip
When open, a door never projects beyond the rear bumper.

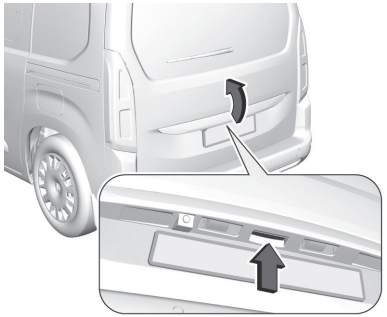
Tailgate Operation

Tailgate

Opening



Depending on the version, press to unlock the tailgate.
After unlocking, press the middle tailgate button and open the tailgate.



Closing

Press on the centre of the rear window until it is fully closed.



Use the interior handle.
Do not push the middle tailgate button whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.

General hints for operating tailgate

⚠ Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle.
This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

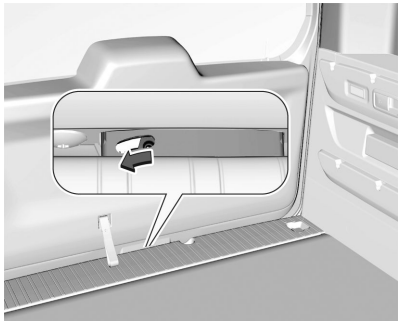
Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

Note
The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

Note
At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself.
In this case lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

Emergency tailgate opening from inside the vehicle



An access hole between the door and the floor enables the tailgate latch to be released using a suitable tool.
Push lever to the left to unlock and open the tailgate.

Rear window

The rear window can be opened to give access to the load compartment without opening the tailgate. The tailgate and the rear window cannot be opened at the same time.

Opening



After unlocking, press the right tailgate button and open the rear window.

Closing

Press on the centre of the rear window until it is fully closed.

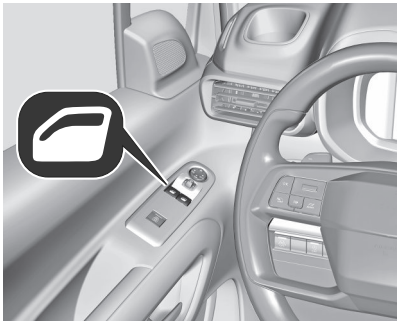
Windows

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.
If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.
Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them.
Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate power windows.



Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.
Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.
Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

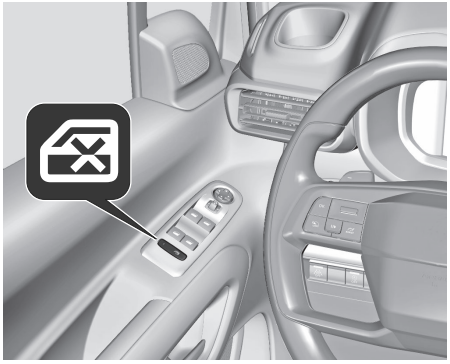
Safety function

This function depends upon version.
If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled.
To stop movement, release the switch.

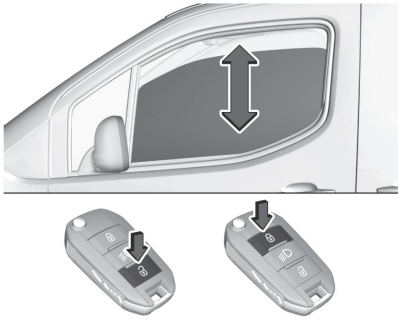
Child safety system for rear windows



1. Press to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates.
2. To activate, press again.

Operating windows from outside

The windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.



1. Press and hold to open windows.
2. Press and hold to close windows.

Release button to stop window movement.

Overload

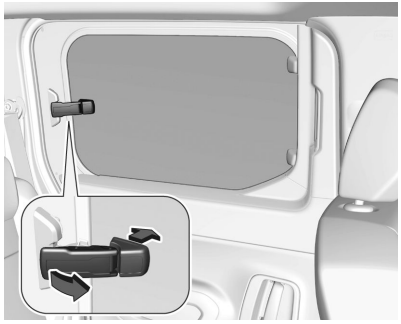
If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

Initializing the power windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Activate the window electronics as follows:

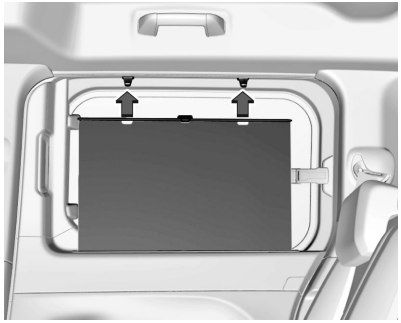
1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
4. Push switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

Rear Windows



To partially open the rear windows, tilt the lever and push it fully to lock the windows in the open position.

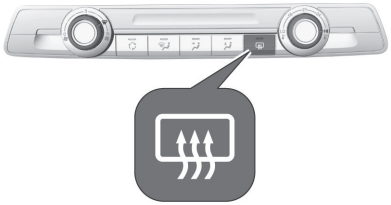
Roller blinds



To reduce sunlight at the second row seats, pull the blind upwards using the grip and engage it at the top of the door frame.

Heated Rear Window

Operated by pressing together with heated exterior mirrors.
The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.
Depending on climate control system, is located at a different position.



Windscreen

Windscreen stickers

Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the Windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice. Otherwise, the detection zone of the rain sensor/light sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Windscreen replacement

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately according to Vauxhall specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from these systems.

Heated windscreen



This function heats the windscreen along its bottom and along the driver's side of the windscreen.
Thus, the function allows a fast detaching of the windscreen wiper blades if they are frozen to the windscreen. Additionally, an accumulation of snow caused by the operation of the windscreen wipers is prevented.



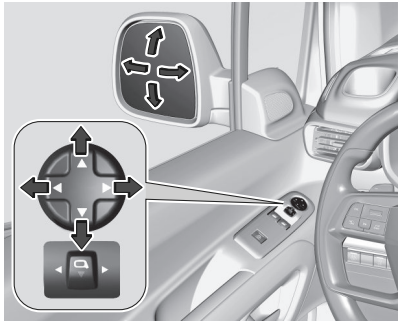
Heating is operated by pressing .
LED in button illuminates.
The heating works only with freezing outside temperatures and switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.
Pressing again switches off the heating operation. LED in button is extinguished.

Sun Visors

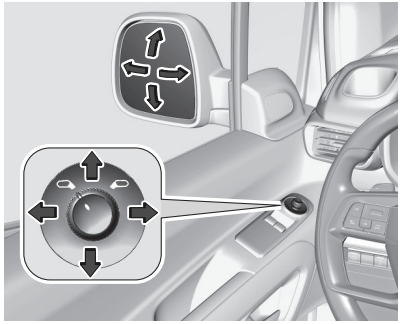
The sun visors can be folded down or swiveled to the side to prevent dazzling.
If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.
A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

Mirrors

Power Outside Mirrors

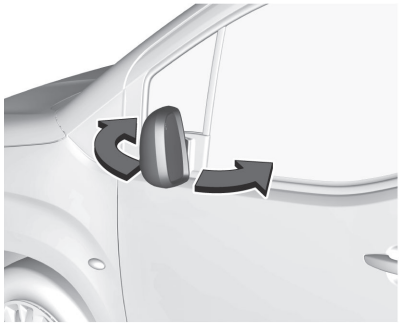


Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing the mirror button to the left or right.
Adjust the respective mirror by the four-way control.



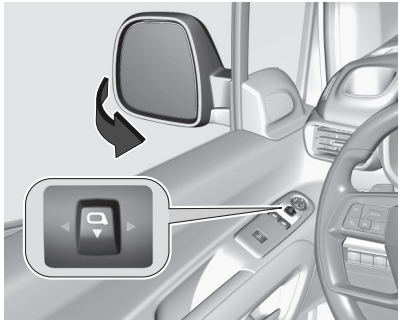
Select the relevant exterior mirror by turning the control to left or right mirror symbol .
Adjust respective mirror by tilting the four-way control.

Folding Mirrors



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Electric folding

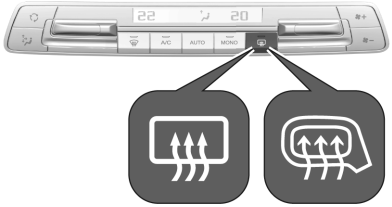


Pull the mirror button rearwards.
Both exterior mirrors will fold.
Pull the mirror button rearwards again to return both exterior mirrors to their original position.
If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pulling mirror button rearwards will only electrically extend the other mirror.

Automatic folding

When the vehicle is unlocked, the mirrors swing to their normal mounting position.
When the vehicle is locked, the mirrors are folded down.

Heated Mirrors



Depending on the version, heating is operated by pressing or .
The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Convex Shape

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Inside Rearview Mirror

Manual anti-dazzle

To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

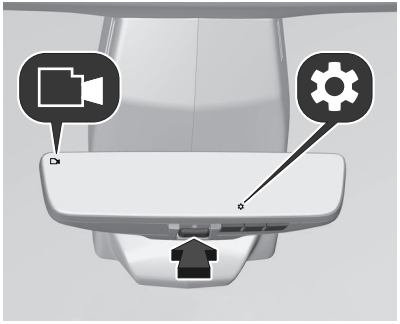
Automatic anti-dazzle



Dazzle from following vehicles is automatically reduced when driving in the dark.

Rearview Display Mirror

If switched off, the rear view display functions as a standard mirror.



If switched on, the rear view display can show two different views:

- rear view
- rear view and passenger side view

Child Surveillance Mirror

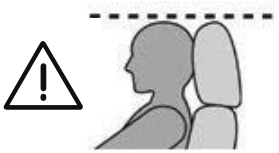


A child surveillance mirror allows to observe the rear seats. The mirror can be adjusted.

Head Restraints Position

Position

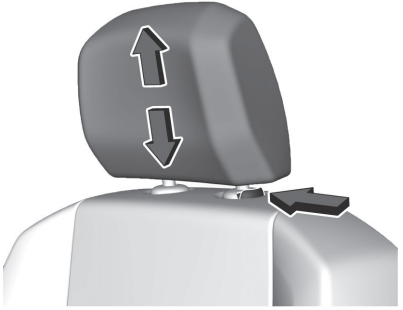
⚠ Warning
Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.



The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

Adjustment

Head restraints on front seats



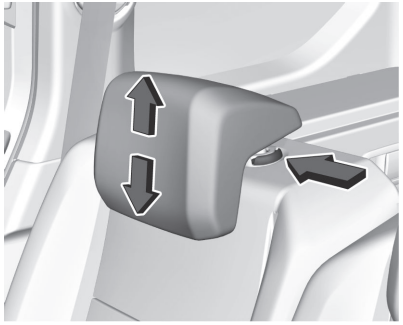
Height adjustment

Pull the head restraint upwards or push it downwards.

Removal

Press the catch, pull the respective head restraint upwards and remove.

Head restraints on rear seats



Height adjustment

Pull the head restraint upwards or push it downwards.

Removal

Press the catch, pull the respective head restraint upwards and remove.

Seats

Front Seat Position

Seat position

⚠ Warning

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

⚠ Warning

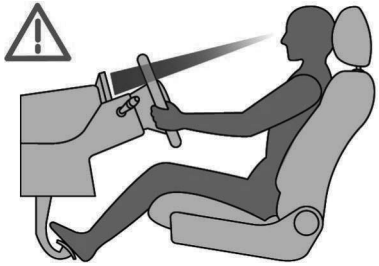
Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

⚠ Danger

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Warning

Never store any objects under the seats.



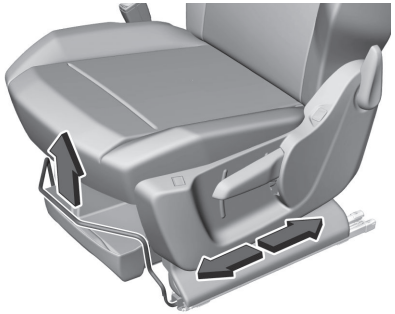
Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:
– head restraint height.
– seat backrest angle.
– seat cushion height.
– longitudinal seat position.
– steering wheel height and reach.
– rear view mirror and door mirrors.
Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible.
  Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders are on the backrest.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

Manual Front Seats

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

Longitudinal adjustment



1. Pull the handle, slide the seat, then release the handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.



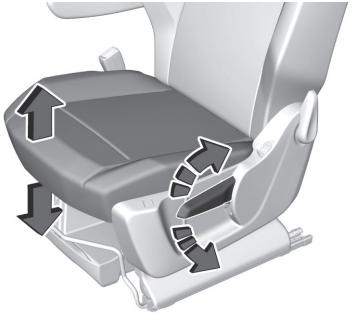
2. Depending on version, pull the lever of the passenger seat and slide the seat, then release the handle.

Backrest inclination



1. Push the lever, adjust inclination and release the lever. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat height



Lever pumping motion.

up	seat higher
down	seat lower

Lumbar support



1. Turn the hand-wheel to suit personal requirements.

Heated Seats



Activate seat heating by pressing for the respective front seat.
The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C.

Pressing once more deactivates seat heating.

With the two-seat front bench seat, the driver's seat control switches the heating on or off for the bench seat's outer seat.

Restriction

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

⚠ Warning

Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Folding Front Seats

Depending on version, the front passenger seat can be folded flat to the table position.

Folding single seat front passenger side

Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible, to avoid contact with the instrument panel during folding.
Push the head restraint down or remove it before folding backrest .
Depending on version, remove the armrest



1. Push lever, fold backrest fully forwards and release the lever. Then push the backrest down further until it is completely flat.

Unfolding single seat front passenger side

1. To restore the seat to the upright position, pull up the backrest as far as it will go.

2. Pull the lever and raise backrest fully then release the lever.

Folding bench seat front passenger side



1. Fold down the centre backrest by pulling the loop.



2. Fold down the outer backrest by pulling the loop.
3. Swing the backrest forwards until the seat is lowered on the vehicle floor. This position allows you to transport long loads inside the vehicle with the doors closed. When retracted, the maximum weight on the backrest is 50 kg.



4. To lift the seat cushion pull the lever and raise the seat cushion against the backrest until it locks.

Unfolding bench seat front passenger side

To restore the backrest to the upright position, pull up the seat till it is engaged. To restore the seat cushion to the original position, push the lever and lower the seat cushion till it is engaged.

⚠ Warning

When the front passenger seat is in the folded position, the front passenger airbag system must be deactivated.

Front Armrest





The armrest can be folded up.



To remove the armrest fold it up, push and turn it to the position shown in the picture.
Then pull off the armrest from the backrest.
To fit the armrest engage it in the backrest. Push and fold the armrest in the upright position. Pull the armrest out a bit and fold it downwards.

Rear Seat Position

Second row seats

Depending on the equipment, the rear seat backrest is divided into two or three parts.
All parts can be folded down.
Before folding rear seat backrests, execute the following if necessary:

1. Move front seats forward.
2. Remove the load compartment cover

Third row seats

⚠ Warning

When rear seats or backrests are being adjusted or folded, keep hands and feet away from the moving area.
Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.
Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

⚠ Warning

When installing the rear seats, ensure that the seat assembly is properly located on the anchor points, the locks are fully engaged, and the backrest is returned to the correct position.
Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of hard braking or a collision.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle.

Depending on version, the load compartment area can be increased by folding up or removing the third row seats.

Folding Rear Seats

Second row seats

1. Push the head restraint downwards
2. Check that the outer seat belts are lying correctly on the backrests.



3. Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.



4. Depending on version, fold down the centre backrest by pulling the loop.



5. Alternatively fold seat backrests from the load compartment: pull lever on left or right sidewall of the load compartment to fold the rear seat backrests.

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the rear backrests from the load compartment. The backrest is folded with considerable power.
Risk of injury, particularly to children. Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed.
Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.

Unfolding the seats

To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

⚠ Warning

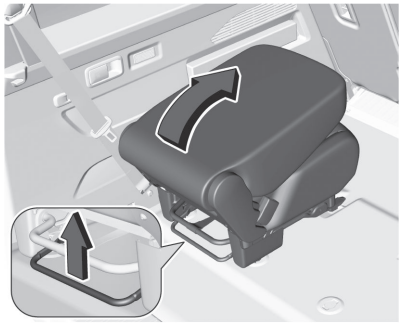
When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

Third row seats

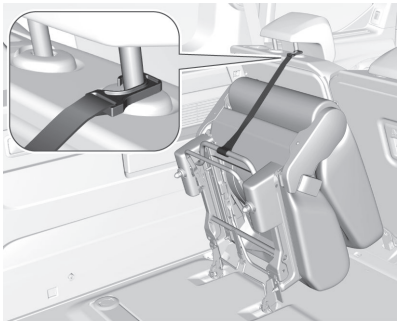
1. Push the head restraint downwards and if necessary fold down the seats of the second row.



2. Pull the lever and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion.



3. Pull the handle and tilt the entire seat forwards.



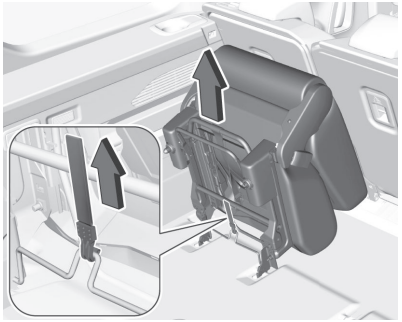
4. Secure the folded seat in the upright position by attaching the strap to one of the pillars of the head restraint in front of the folded seat.

Unfolding the seats

1. Ensure that the seat belts do not obstruct the unfolding manoeuvre.
2. Remove the strap and lower the seat assembly to the floor, ensuring the rear support is located on the anchor point and securely latched into position.
3. Raise the backrest and adjust the head restraint.

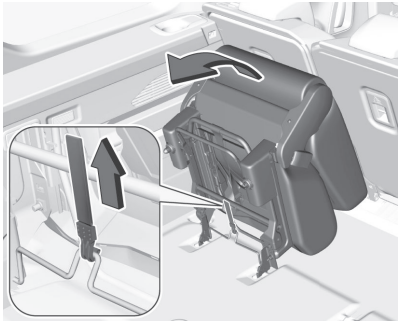
Removing the seats

1. Push the head restraint downwards and if necessary fold down the seats of the second row.
2. Pull the lever and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion. Pull the handle and tilt the entire seat forwards (refer to "Folding the seats" above).



3. Pull the loop to disengage the locks and remove the seat assembly from the floor anchor points.

Installing the seats



1. Attach the seat assembly front supports to the front anchor points.
2. Fold the seat backwards to the floor to fix its rear anchor point.
3. Raise the backrest and adjust the head restraint.

Longitudinal seat adjustment



Pull the handle, slide the seat, then release the handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Labels in row 3





While driving, it is prohibited to have a passenger seated next to a seat in the fully folded position.

Folding the centre seatback



The front centre passenger seat backrest has a document tray.

⚠ Warning
When the front passenger seat is in the folded position, the front passenger airbag system must be deactivated.

Seat belts introduction

The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, holding the occupants in the seat position. Therefore the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip.
In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time.
Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage, soiling and proper functionality.
Have damaged components replaced.
After an accident, have the seat belts and triggered seat belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.

Note

Make sure that the seat belts are neither damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects nor trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the seat belt retractors.

Note

Use the belt buckle intended for the respective seat belt when fastening in order to ensure proper functionality.

Seat belt reminder

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated by a control indicator for the respective seat in the roof console.

Seat belt force limiters

Stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the seat belt during a collision.

Front Seat Belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and force limiter.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.



The front seat belts are fitted with a single pyrotechnic pretensioning system (or double on the driver's side, depending on equipment) and a force limiter (or progressive force limiter on the driver's side, depending on equipment options).
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the single pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The double pyrotechnic pretensionsining system operates the same way, except that it uses two anchor points rather than one, for enhanced effectiveness.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.
The progressive force limiter operates in the same way, except that it takes the driver's stature into consideration, thus optimising the reduction in the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the occupant's chest in the event of an impact.

Rear Seat Belts



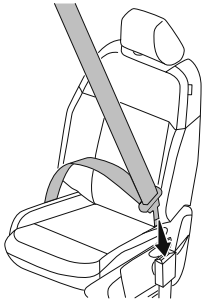
Each rear seat is equipped with a seat belt but no pyrotechnic pretensioning system or force limiter.
Take care to insert each seat belt into its matching buckle.

Do not interchange the belts or buckles for the outer seats with the belt or buckle for the centre seat.

Three-point seat belt

Fasten

Withdraw the seat belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Make sure the seat belt lies across the shoulder and fits tightly to the body while driving.



Loose or bulky clothing prevents the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the seat belt and your body.

⚠ Warning

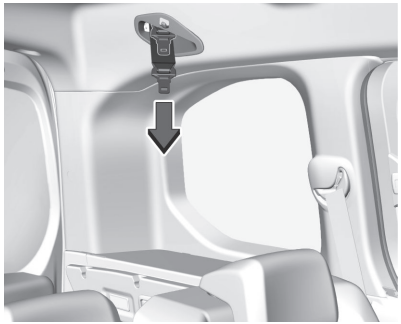
The seat belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Unfasten

To release seat belt, press red button on seat belt buckle and guide the seat belt back.

Centre Seat Belt Of The Second Seat Row

The centre seat is equipped with a particular three-point seat belt.



Pull latch plates with the seat belt out of seat belt holder in the roof.



Insert lower latch plate into left-hand buckle (**1**) at the centre seat. Guide the upper latch plate with the seat belt over the lap area and the shoulder (do not twist) and insert it into right-hand buckle (**2**) at centre seat.
To unfasten the seat belt, first press the button on the right-hand buckle (**2**) and remove upper latch plate.
Then press the button on the left-hand buckle (**1**) and remove lower latch plate.
The seat belt retracts automatically.

Using Seat Belts While Pregnant

⚠ Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Seat belt pretensioners

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer second row seat belts are tightened by seat belt pretensioners.

⚠ Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of seat belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the seat belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator .
Triggered seat belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop.
Seat belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

Note
Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the seat belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to seat belt pretensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Airbag system introduction

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.
When triggered the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Warning

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Caution

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

⚠ Warning

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

⚠ Warning

Adding accessories that change the vehicle frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts, airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Note

The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials. Have damaged covers replaced by a workshop.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Control indicator for airbag systems

Child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag systems



⚠ Danger

NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG geschützt ist, da dies den TOD oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN DES KINDES zur Folge haben kann.

FR: NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'infliger des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.

ES: NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.

IT: Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all'indietro su un sedile protetto da AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESIONI GRAVI per il BAMBINO!

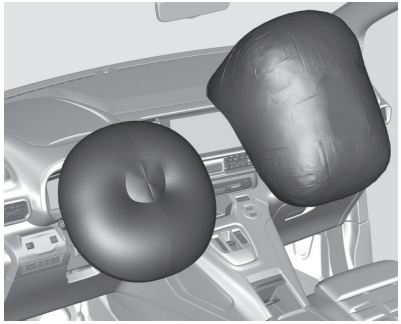
Additionally, for safety reasons a forward-facing child restraint system must only be used subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table

The airbag label is located on both sides of the front passenger sun visor.

Front Airbag system

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the roof on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

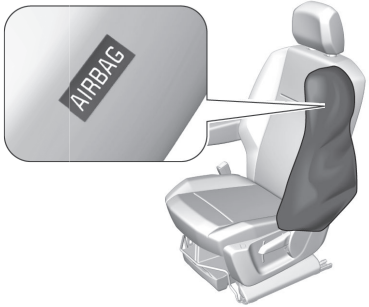
⚠ Warning

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position. Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.
Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

Lateral Airbags

The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest.

This can be identified by the word AIRBAG.
The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

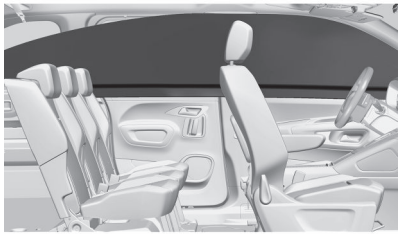
⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Note
Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle.
Be careful not to cover the airbags.

Curtain Airbags

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.
The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

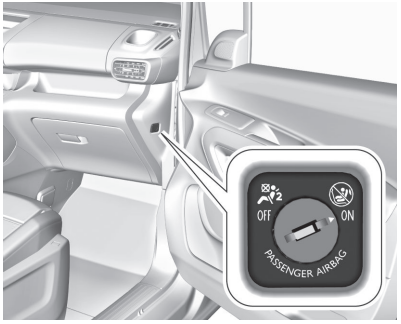
⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.

Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation

The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated for child restraint system on the passenger seat according to the instructions in the table. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.



The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key operated switch on the passenger side of the instrument panel.
Use the ignition key to choose the position:

With the ignition off:

- To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.
- To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

Associated warning lights

Steady, permanent lighting to indicate deactivation.

Steady lighting when the ignition is turned on for

⚠ Danger

Deactivate passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table. Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.



If the control indicator illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.
If the control indicator illuminates after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.
If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat. Contact a workshop immediately. Consult a workshop immediately if neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.

In the event of a fault a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and warning chime will sound. Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.
Status remains until the next change.

Child restraints

Child Restraints Introduction

Tip
The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.
Tip
It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:
– '**rearward facing**' up to the age of 3 years old,
– '**forward facing**' over the age of 3 years old.

⚠ Warning

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.

⚠ Warning

Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.

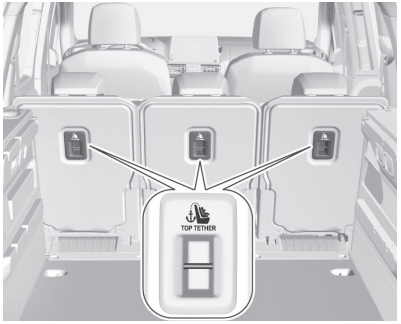
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

We recommend a child restraint system that is tailored specifically to the vehicle. For further information, contact your workshop.
In case of any interference of the child restraint system with vehicle seat head restraint, adjust or remove the corresponding head restraint.
When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system. The given restrictions in the table refer to a test body, which is the maximum envelope of all existing child restraint systems. Make sure that the front seats do not interfere with the used child restraint system.
Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.
Only drive with the driver seat correctly adjusted.
Child restraint systems can be fastened with:

- Three-points seat belts
- ISOFIX brackets
- Top-tether

Top-tether anchors

Top-tether anchors are marked with the symbol for a child seat.



In addition to the ISOFIX brackets, fasten the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchors.
ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table by IUF.

Selecting the right system

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system. Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident. Do not

use forward-facing child restraint system at all seats when child's weight is below 13 kg.
Suitable are child restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.
Child seat at the front: Adjust the front passenger seat to the highest and fully back longitudinal position with the backrest straightened.
Child seat at the rear: Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing or the rearward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
Please follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions to install the corresponding child restraint system in the vehicle.
For semi-universal or vehicle specific child restraint system (ISOFIX or belted child restraint system), see the vehicle list provided in the user manual of the child restraint system.
Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following table.
Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.
When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

Note

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.
A child restraint system that has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

Three-Points Seat Belts

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened.
Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened.

Isofix Anchorage Connectors



Row 2



Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the ISOFIX table.
The ISOFIX brackets are located below the i-Size symbol in the seat cover.
An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according UN Regulation No.129.
All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, i-Size table.
Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets.
A support leg must be placed firmly on the floor. Positioning the support leg in a footwell storage is not permitted.



i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol, see illustration.

I-Size Child Seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that are anchored to the two rings **A**.
These i-Size child seats also have:
– either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**.
– or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.
Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.
For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings,** refer to the corresponding section.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

"RÖMER Baby-Safe 3 i-Size"

Size: 40 - 83 cm



From birth to 15 months

(up to 13 kg)
With or without its ISOFIX base.
Suitable for "rearward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER TriFix 2 i-Size"

Size: 76 - 105 cm



From 15 months to 4 years

(from 9 to 22 kg)
Installed with ISOFIX and Top Tether mountings.
Suitable for "forward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER KidFix i-Size"

Size: 100 - 138 cm



From 3.5 to 12 years

(from 15 to 36 kg)
Can be installed with or without ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

"GRACO Booster"

Size: over 135 cm



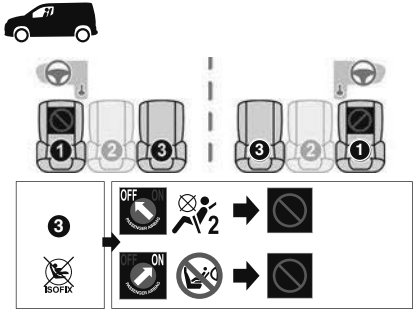
(from 22 to 36 kg)
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Note
Please follow the child restraint manufacturers' instructions for installing the appropriate child restraint in the vehicle.

Note
For the semi-universal or vehicle-specific child restraint (ISOFIX or belt-type child restraint), refer to the list of vehicles provided in the child restraint user manual.

Note
Ensure that the installation location of the child restraint system inside the vehicle is correct. Refer to the summary table for the installation of child seats.

Child Restraint Installation Locations



Key

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

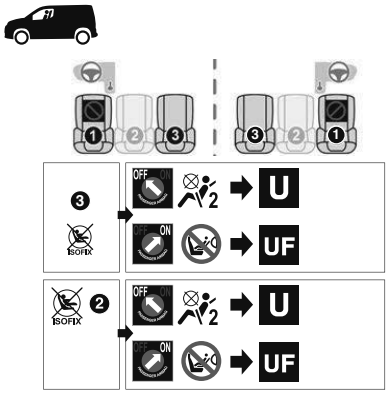
Front passenger airbag **deactivated** and associated warning lamp.

Front passenger airbag **activated** and associated warning lamp.

Seat position where the installation of an ISOFIX child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table **"Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats"**.

	Seat numbers	
	Front seats (b)	
 	1	3
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" (c) / Activated "ON" (d)
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	no
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	no
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no
Position equipped with a **TOP TETHER** hook	no	no
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no
"Booster" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	no



Key

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

Front passenger airbag **deactivated** and associated warning lamp.

Front passenger airbag **activated** and associated warning lamp.

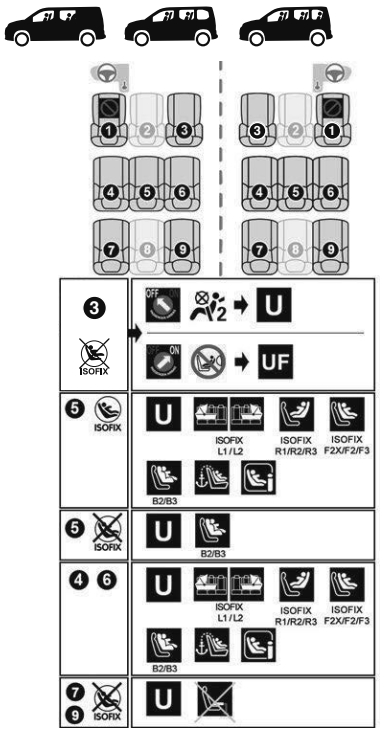
U Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" (U)** for groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

UF Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing" (UF)** for groups **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

ISOFIX Seat position where the installation of an ISOFIX child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table **"Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats"**.

	Seat numbers				
	Front seats (b)				
 	1	2		3	
Front passenger airbag		**Deactivated "OFF" (c)**	**Activated "ON" (d)**	**Deactivated "OFF" (c)**	**Activated "ON" (d)**
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	yes **(e)**	no	yes **(e)**	no
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	yes **(f)**		yes **(f)**	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no		no	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no		no	
Position equipped with a **TOP TETHER** hook	no	no		no	
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no		no	
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no		R3 **(j)**	
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no		F3 **(j)**	
"Booster" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	no		B3 **(j)**	



Key

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

Front passenger airbag **deactivated** and associated warning lamp.

Front passenger airbag **activated** and associated warning lamp.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" (U)** for groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing" (UF)** for groups **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

Seat position authorised for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.

Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat with support leg.

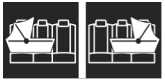
Presence of a Top Tether anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of an universal ISOFIX child seat.

"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:
- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX large size** child seat.

"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:
- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers.**
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.

Booster child seat:
- **B2: reduced width booster** seat.
- **B3: full width booster** seat.

ISOFIX **"carrycot"** type child seat:
– **L1**: left-hand facing.
– **L2**: right-hand facing.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.

Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

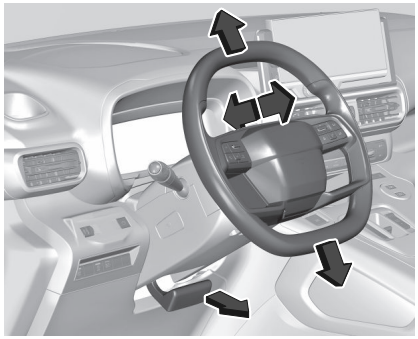
For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table "**Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats**".

	Seat numbers						
	Front seats (b)			Rear seats (b) (i) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3
	1	3		4	5	6	7	9
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)					
Position compatible with an **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	yes **(e)** **(g)**/no **(h)**	no		yes **(j)**		yes **(i)** **(j)** **(k)** **(l)**	
Position compatible with an **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	yes **(f)** **(g)**/no **(h)**			yes **(j)**		yes **(i)** **(j)** **(k)** **(l)**	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no		yes **(q)**	yes **(q)**/ no **(m)**	yes **(q)**	no	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no		yes **(q)**	yes **(q)**/ no **(m)**	yes **(q)**	no	
Position equipped with a **TOP TETHER** hook	no	no		yes	yes/no **(p)**	yes	no	

	Seat numbers						
	Front seats (b)		Rear seats (b) (i) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3	
	1	3	4	5	6	7	9
Front passenger airbag		**Deactivated "OFF" (c)** / **Activated "ON" (d)**					
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no	yes **(n)**	yes **(n)**/ no **(m)**	yes **(n)**	no	
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no	R3 **(o)**	R3 **(m)** **(o)**	R3 **(o)**	no	
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no	F3	F3 **(m)**	F3	no	
"**Booster**" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	no	B3 **(j)**	B3 **(m)**	B3	no	

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Adjustment



Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked. Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.
Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position in a smooth way.

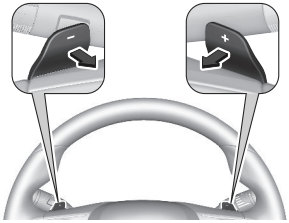
Steering Wheel Controls

Some driver assistance systems, Infotainment system and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.



Steering Wheel Mounted Paddle Shifters

In mode **M** or **D**, the paddle shifters can be used to change gear manually.
They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.



On vehicles with automatic transmission, gearshifting can be operated via + or -.
On BEVs, the regenerative braking mode can be operated via + or -.

Heated Steering Wheel



Activate heating by pressing .
Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.
The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C.
Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop (Stop & Start).

Horn

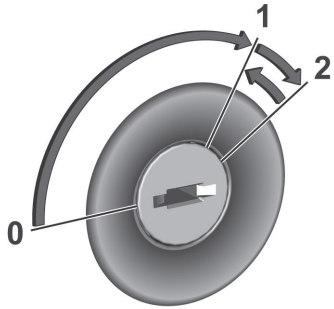


Press .

Ignition Switch

Ignition Switch Positions

Turn key:

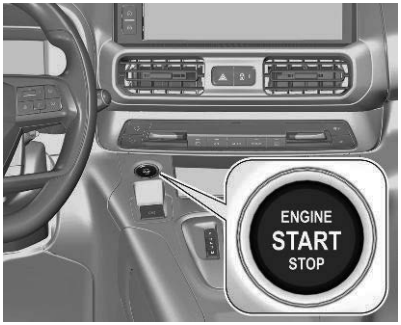


0 ignition off: some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously

1 ignition on power mode: ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating, control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable

2 engine start: release key after engine has been started

Power Button

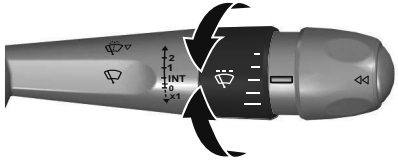


The electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

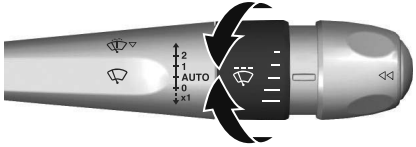
Wipers and washers

Windscreen Wiper And Washer

With intermittent wipers



With AUTO wiping



2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
Int	Intermittent wipers
AUTO	Automatic wipers
0	Switching off
	Manual

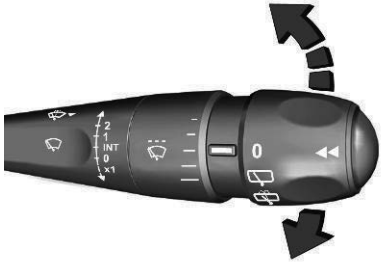
Do not use if the windscreen is frozen. Switch off in car washes.

Adjustable wiper frequency



Wiper lever in position INT, it is possible to select five frequency levels by turning the ring.

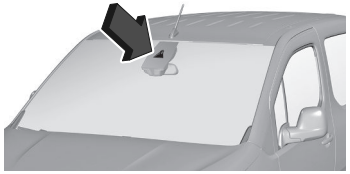
Windscreen wiper with rain sensor



2	fast
1	normal
INT	automatic wiping
0	off
x1	single wipe

Note

In position 1 or 2, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced when the speed of the vehicle drops below 3 mph (5 km/h).When the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) again, the wiping frequency returns to the original frequency (fast or normal).
In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.
Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.
Switch off in car washes.



Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity.
The longest dash indicates the highest sensitivity and the shortest dash indicates the lowest sensitivity.
Make sure the sensor is not covered .

Windscreen washer



Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper wipes a few times.

Note

The windscreen wash jets are incorporated into the tip of each wiper arm.An additional jet is installed below the midpoint of the arm on the driver's side. Screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces screenwash fluid consumption.

Note

With automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control results in temporary closure of the air intake to protect the passenger compartment from any odour.

⚠ Warning

To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty.
Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility.
During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products.
Never top up with water.

Low screenwash fluid level

When the low level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel,

accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
It comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.
Refill the screenwash reservoir (or have it refilled) the next time you stop.

Rear Window Wiper And Washer

Rear window wiper



0 off

intermittent wiping

screen wash

Do not use if the rear window is frozen.
Switch off in car washes.
The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.
To activate the rear wiper the next time the ignition is switched on, turn to position 0 and back to .

⚠ Warning

In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

Rear window washer

Select .

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and rear view camera and the wiper wipes as long as is selected.

Special Position Of The Windscreen Wipers

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

Note

To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care
- clean them regularly using soapy water
- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen
- replace them at the first signs of wear

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade

Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.

- Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

- To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Exterior lights

Lighting Controls



Turn adjuster wheel:

AUTO automatic light control switches automatically between daytime running light and headlight

sidelights

low beam / high beam

Display

A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp,

accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

High Beam



To activate or deactivate the high beam, pull the lever beyond the resistance point.

Low Beam/High Beam

The system switches from low beam to high beam and vice versa to prevent glaring. Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding conditions. The latest setting of the high beam assist will remain set after the ignition is switched on again.

⚠ Warning

Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!



Activation

The high beam assist can be activated via the vehicle settings menu on the Info Display.
High beam is switched on automatically in dark surroundings at a speed above 45 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.

The green control indicator illuminates continuously when the high beam assist is activated, the blue illuminates when high beam is on.

High beam assist switches automatically to low beam when:

- Driving in urban areas.
- Camera detects heavy fog.
- Rear fog light is switched on.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles are detected by the camera.

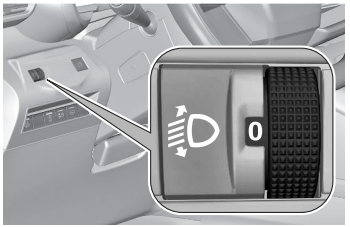
If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated via the vehicle settings menu on the Info Display.

Headlight Height Adjustment

Manual headlight range adjustment



To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel to required position.

ICE

0 front seats occupied

1 all seats occupied

2 all seats occupied with load compartment laden

3 driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden

BEV

0 front seats occupied

1 all seats occupied with or without load compartment laden

2 all seats occupied and load compartment laden

3 not used

Headlight flash



To activate the headlight flash, pull the lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

Note

Headlights when driving abroad

When driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, the headlights do not have to be adjusted.

Note

Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.

Turn Lights

Tip

If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).



up	right turn light
down	left turn light

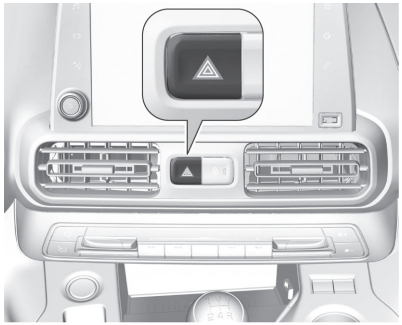
A resistance point can be felt when moving the indicator lever.

Constant flashing is activated when the indicator lever is being moved beyond the resistance point. It is deactivated when the steering wheel is moved in the opposite direction or indicator lever is manually moved back to its neutral position.

Activate temporary flashing by holding the indicator lever just before the resistance point. Turn lights will flash until indicator lever is being released.

To activate three flashes, tap the indicator lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

Emergency Signals



Pressing this red button ⚠ causes all the direction indicators to flash.
They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic Light Control



When the automatic light control function is switched on, the system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the wiper system. Make sure the sensor is not blocked.

Automatic headlight activation

Turn the adjuster wheel in position:

AUTO

During poor lighting conditions the headlights are switched on. Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

Guide-Me-Home And Welcome Lighting

Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "AUTO" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.
With Smartphone Station You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the Driving instrument panel menu.

With Smartphone Station

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the **Driving** instrument panel menu.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the **Driving** instrument panel menu.

Manual

With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/deactivate the function. Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome lighting

When the vehicle is unlocked in low light conditions and the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function is activated, this system automatically switches on:
– Outside, sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps.

– Inside, courtesy lamps and footwell lighting.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the **Driving** instrument panel menu.

Front Fog Lights



Turn the adjuster wheel forwards/ backwards to switch on/off.
Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

Rear Fog Lights

Depending on version:



Turn the adjuster wheel forwards/ backwards to switch on/off.



Turn the adjuster wheel forwards / backwards to switch on / off the front fog light.
Turn the adjuster wheel two times forwards / backwards to switch on / off the rear fog light.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.
Light switch in position : rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.
The vehicle rear fog light is deactivated when towing a trailer or a plug is connected with the socket, e.g. when a bicycle carrier is used.

Parking Lights



When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Move the lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by an audible chime and the corresponding turn light control indicator.

Reverse Lights

The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.
They are switched on automatically when the engine is running.
The system switches between daytime running lights and low beam automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

Matrix-LED Headlights

The Matrix-LED headlight system contains a variety of particular LEDs in each headlight which enables the control of the adaptive forward lighting functions. Light distribution and intensity of light are variably triggered depending on the lighting conditions, road type and driving situation. The vehicle adapts the headlights automatically to the situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver.
The adaptive forward lighting and the Matrix-LED headlights functions can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle personalisation menu.

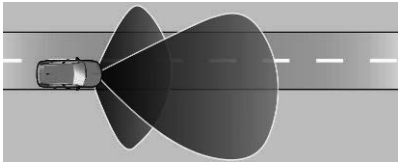
The glare-free high beam function of the Matrix-LED headlights are only available with light switch in position **AUTO**.

Country light



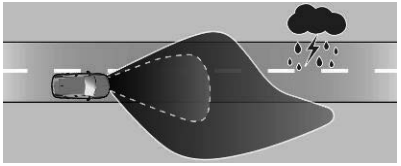
Activated automatically with vehicle speed when driving in rural areas.
The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is adapted.
Oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

Town light



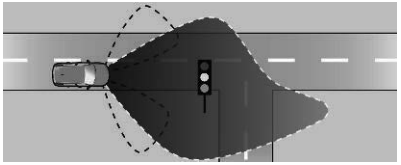
Activated automatically at a speed up to approx. 50 km/h (30 mph). The light is wide and symmetrical.

Adverse weather light



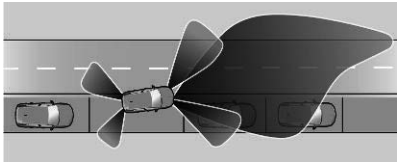
If bad weather conditions are detected, low beam is dimmed to avoid dazzling the oncoming traffic.

Cornering light



Particular LEDs, based on direction of travel, are additionally triggered to improve lighting. This function is activated at a speed up to 40 km/h (24 mph) when turning off.

Reverse parking function



To assist driver's orientation when parking, cornering lights and reversing light illuminate when headlights are activated and reverse gear is engaged.

Cornering light and reversing light remain illuminated for a short time after disengaging the reverse gear, or when accelerating to a speed above approx. 10 km/h (6 mph).

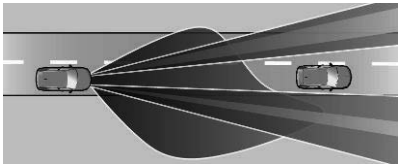
Eco mode

During an Autostop the headlight functions are reduced to save power.

Glare-free high beam

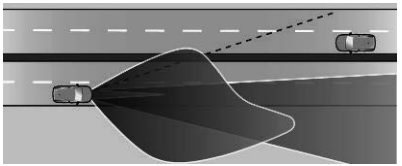
> **⚠ Warning**
>
> The glare-free high beam function may dazzle other drivers when the vehicle is used in countries with opposite-side traffic, e.g., a left-hand drive vehicle driven in a right-hand drive country. Switch off glare-free high beam function whenever you are driving in countries mentioned above.

The system enables a glare-free high beam when driving in dark surroundings.



Each LED on right or left side is triggered or faded out particularly according to the traffic situation. This gives the best light distribution without dazzling other road users.
Glare-free high beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 25 km/h (18 mph). It is switched off at a speed below 15 km/h (9 mph), but the system remains active.

Motorway mode



Motorway mode is activated automatically. Illumination is adapted to the higher speed driven on motorways. If there is oncoming traffic, following vehicles ahead or passing, the illumination on the side of the vehicle is reduced.

Fault in LED headlight system

When the system detects a failure in the LED headlight system, it selects a preset position to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.

Interior lighting

Courtesy Lights

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.

Note

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Front and rear courtesy light

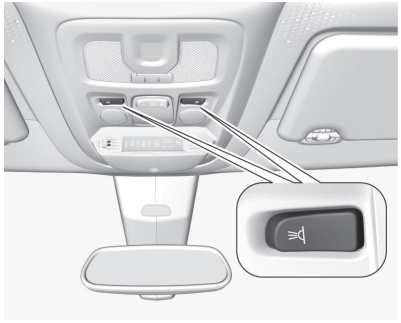


Operate rocker switch:

- automatic switching on and off
- on

◯ off

Reading Lights



Operated by pressing ⪼ and ⪻in the courtesy lights.



Illustration shows rear courtesy lights.

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

The brightness of the following lights can be adjusted in the settings app ⚙ in the Info Display when the exterior lights are on:

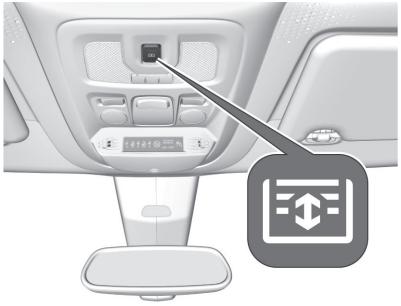
- instrument panel illumination
- Info Display
- illuminated switches and operation elements

Sunvisor Lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

SunRoof

SunRoof



Press ⏏ at the rear: the sunblind is opened as long as the switch is operated.
Press ⏏ at the front: the sunblind is closed as long as the switch is operated.
No object should push the fabric against the roof.

Note

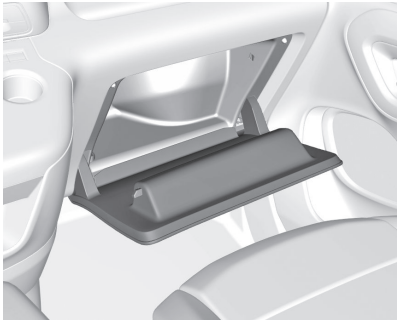
If the blind becomes trapped while moving, reverse its movement. To do this, press the relevant control.
When pressing the button to open/close the blind, the driver must ensure that nothing and no one might interfere with its movement.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.

Pay particular attention to children when operating the blind.

Interior features

⚠ Warning
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage areas.

Glove Compartment



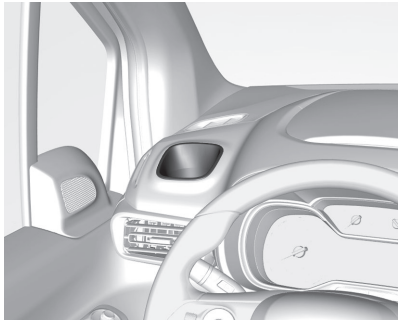
To open the glove-box pull the handle. The glove-box should be closed whilst driving.

Note

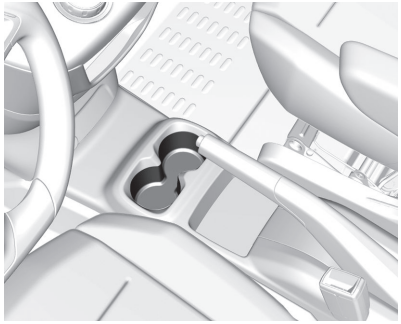
Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is sitting at the front. It may cause injury under sharp deceleration.

Cupholders

Front cupholder

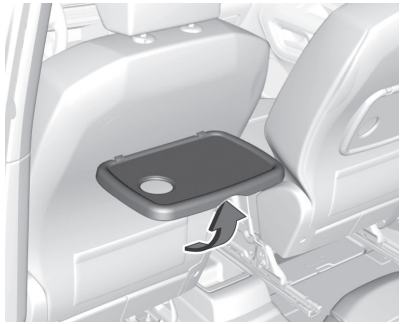


Cup holders are located at the sides of the instrument panel.

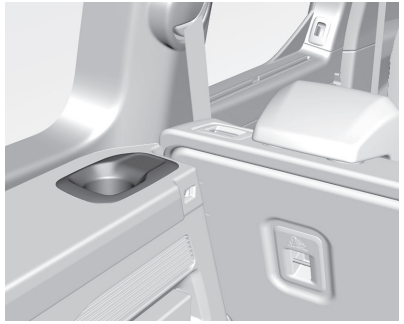


Cupholders may be located in the centre console.

Rear cupholder

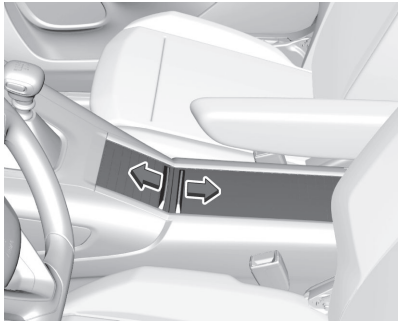


Additional cup holders may be located in the foldaway tables on the backrests of the front seats. Fold up the table.
Do not place any hard or heavy objects on the table.



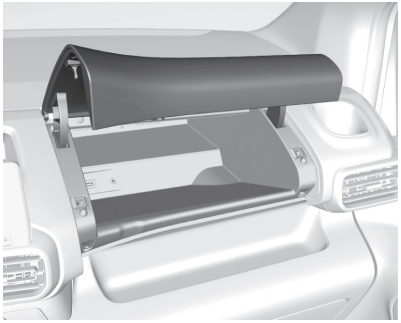
Cupholders for the third row seats are located in the sides of the load compartment.

Center Console Compartment

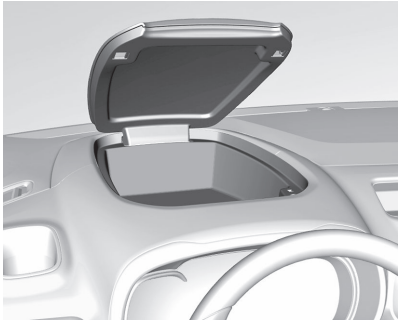


A storage box may be located in the centre console. Press cover to open.
A 12 V power outlet is located behind the storage cover.

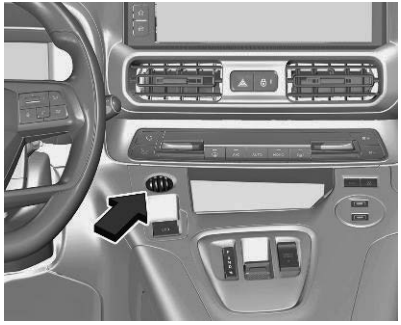
Front Storage



A storage compartment is located on top of the instrument panel.

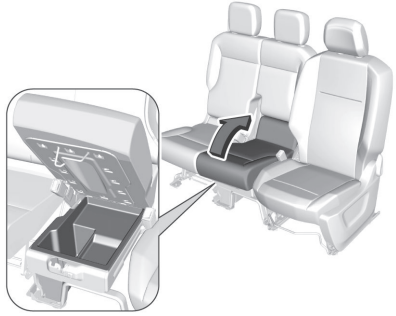


A storage compartment is located above the Instrument cluster.



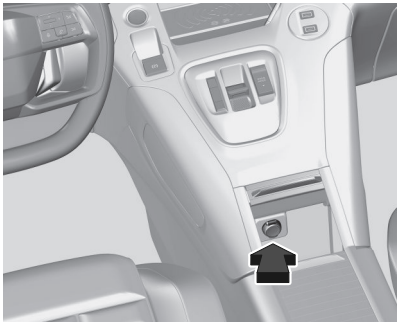
A coin holder is located on the instrument panel.

Seatback Storage

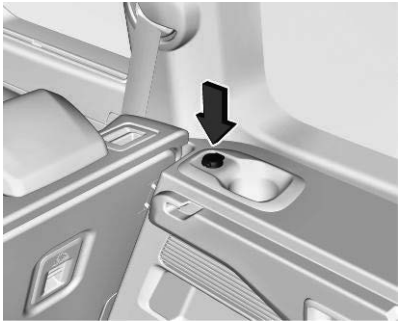


There may be a storage box under the centre bench seat. Lift up the seat cushion by pulling the handle. The storage box can be locked by a padlock.

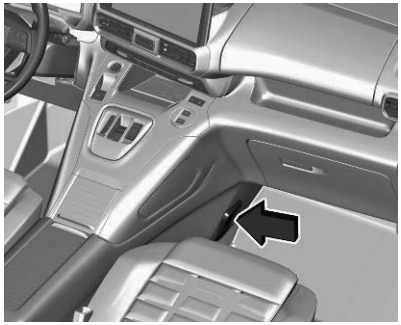
12V Power Outlets



A 12 V power outlet is located behind the storage cover. Push cover upwards to open.
Depending on the version, the 12 V power outlet may be freely accessible.



At the right side of the load compartment, another 12 V power outlet may be located.
Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.

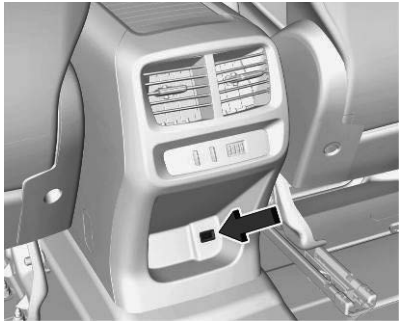


A 230 V power outlet may be located on the lower side of the centre console in the front passenger compartment.
Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 150 W.
With ignition off, the power outlets are deactivated. Additionally the power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.
Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.
Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.
Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.

USB Ports



The USB ports can be used to charge external devices.
Depending on version, a USB port may be used for data exchanging.



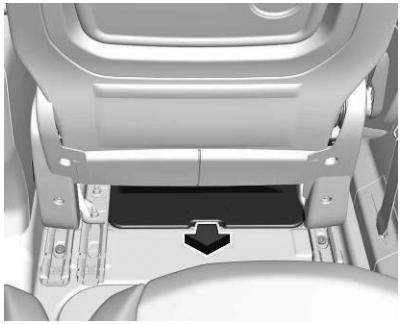
A further USB port may be located in the rear console.
The USB port can be used to charge external devices.

Note

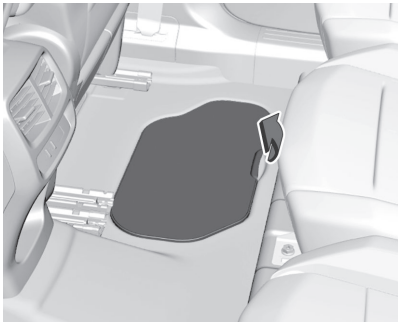
The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

Footwell Storage

The footwell storages can be accessed from the rear seats.



Vehicle tools may be located in the stowage compartments underneath the front seats



Depending on version, there are two stowage compartments in the rear footwell.

Load Compartment

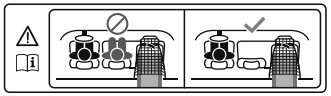
Depending on version, the load compartment area can be increased by folding up or removing the third row seats. The seat backrests of the second row can be folded forward separately. Additionally, the backrest of the passenger seat can be folded. Depending on the loading, only single seats or backrests can be folded.

Positioning the protective cover



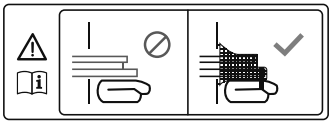
⚠ Warning

Whenever the backrest of the outer seat is folded down and the partition flap is open, the protective cover must be installed.



⚠ Warning

No passengers must be allowed to sit in the central seat if the backrest of the right-hand outer seat is lowered and the partition flap is open.



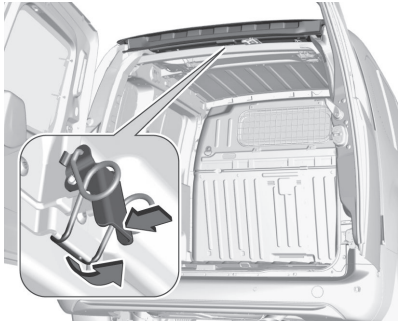
⚠ Warning

When loading long objects, take care to install the protective cover correctly. Read the following procedure carefully.

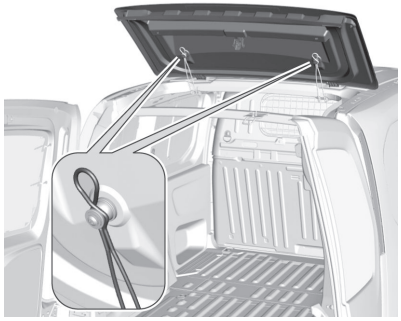
Ladder flap

The ladder flap is available for transporting long loads.

Opening the ladder flap



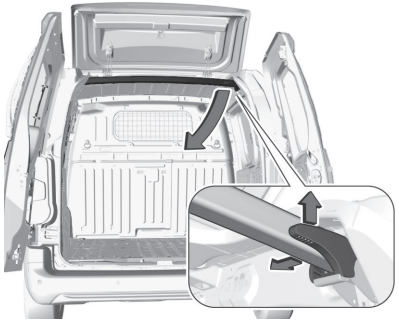
1. Press the lever and disengage the spring clip from the retainer by pulling.
2. Lift the ladder flap



3. Move past the point of resistance to lock the ladder flap with the props.

Support bar

Rest long loads on the support bar.



1. Push the lever to the top.
2. Push the support bar a bit to the front and then guide it down to the door pillar.
3. Hold the long load in the angled position.
4. Move the support bar below the load to its original position. Fix it by pressing the lever downwards past the point of resistance.
   The rear doors will only lock when the support bar is installed.
5. Secure the loads firmly. The side supports can be used as hooking points.

Closing the ladder flap

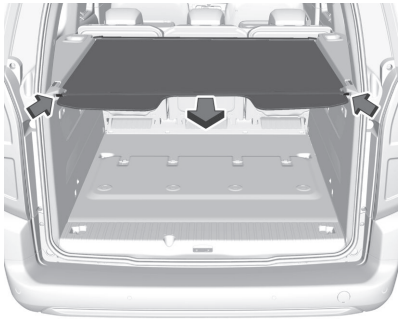


1. Check that the support bar is properly locked.
2. Lower the ladder flap.
3. Fix the spring clip in its retainer.

Load compartment cover

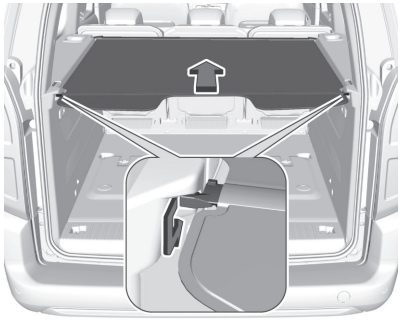
Rear luggage cover Do not place any objects on the cover.

Closing the cover



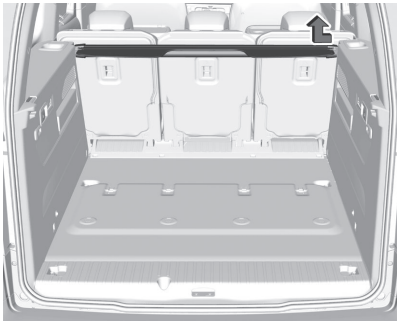
Pull the load compartment cover towards the rear and engage it in the side brackets.

Opening the cover



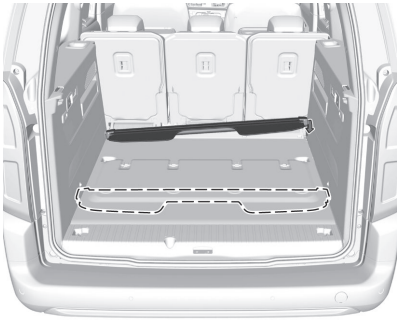
Remove load compartment cover from side brackets. Guide the cover until it is fully rolled up.

Removing the cover



Open the load compartment cover.
Compress the load compartment cover at one side and lift it up.
Remove the load compartment cover.

Stowing in the load compartment



If the load compartment cover is not used, stow it in the load compartment.

It can be stowed behind the second or third row seats.

Fitting the cover

Insert the load compartment cover into the recess at one side. Compress the cover at the other side and engage it in the recess.

Rear parcel shelf

Do not place any excessively heavy or sharp-edged objects on the rear parcel shelf.
The maximum load permissible is 25 kg.
With high loads install the safety net behind the rear seats.

Installing the rear parcel shelf



The rear parcel shelf can be installed in two positions.
Fit the parcel shelf by engaging in the retainers on both sides.

Lifting the rear parcel shelf



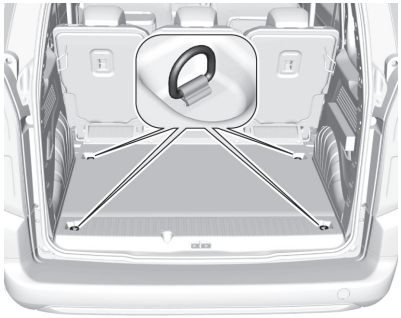
The rear parcel shelf may be folded up from the rear, allowing greater flexibility in the load compartment.

Stowing in the load compartment



Set up the folded cover upright behind the rear seat backrests.

Lashing eyes



The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.



Lashing eyes may be located on the vehicle floor and / or in the sidewall.

The number and location of the lashing eyes may vary depending on the vehicle.



The maximum force applied to the lashing eyes should not exceed 500 daN / 5 kN / 5000 N.
Depending on country, the maximum force may be shown on a label.

Note

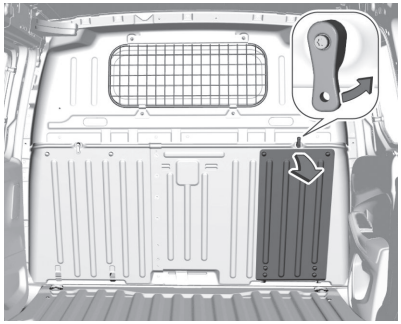
Specifications on the label always have priority over those given in this manual.

Cargo management system

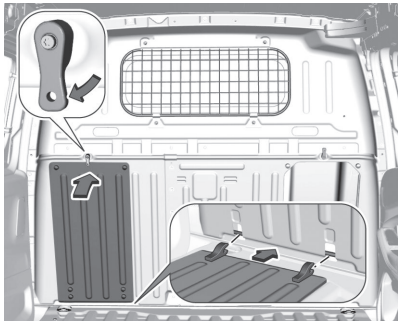


Depending on version, a partition behind the front seats protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.
There may be a flap in the partition behind the passenger seat which can be removed to accommodate long objects. A protective cover is provided in the vehicle to assure safe transportation.
If the outer passenger seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open, the centre seat has to stay free.

Removing the flap



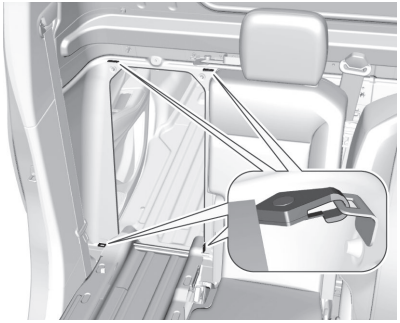
1. Release the locking device, lower the flap and then remove it.
2. Stow the flap behind the driver's seat.



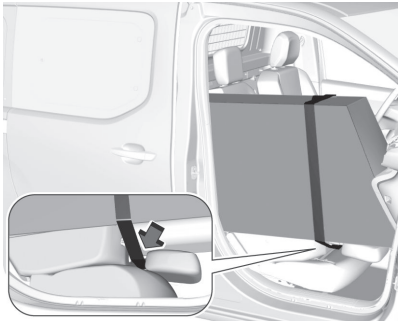
Turn the locking device upwards.

Put the hinges of the flap in their housing, lift the flap and close the locking device.

Fitting the protective cover



1. Attach the four snap hooks of the cover on the corresponding lashing eye.
2. Pull the head restraint from the folded backrest, leaving two notches visible on the head restraint rod
3. Load the objects



4. Pass the strap of the cover around the head restraint. Tension the strap by pulling at the loose end.

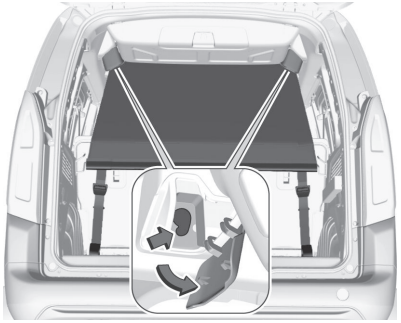
With fitted protective cover the maximum load on the folded backrest is **100 kg**.

Safety net

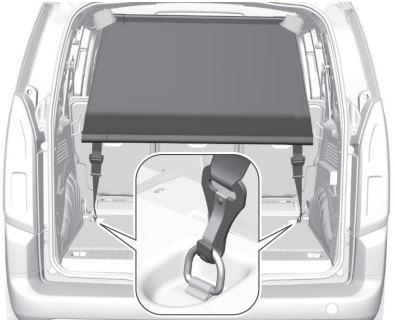
Depending on version, the safety net can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded, behind the front seats.
Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

Installation

Behind the rear seats



- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the rear seats. Open the covers and suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side



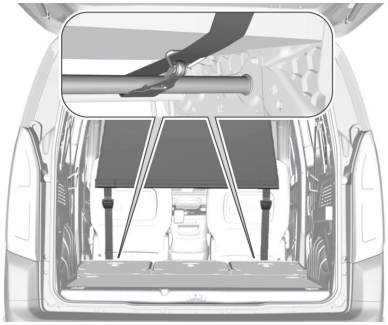
- Attach the hooks of safety net straps in the lashing eyes behind the rear seats. Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Rear seat backrests must be raised up.

Behind the front seats

⚠ Warning
Never use the ISOFIX ring, which is for fixing the strap of a child seat with Top Tether.



- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the front seats. Open the covers and suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.



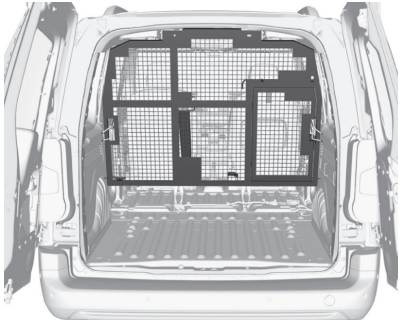
- Wind one strap around the bar located under the front driver seat cushion. The other one wind around the bar of the passenger seat. Then secure each hook to the corresponding strap. Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Push down head restraints and fold down rear seat backrests.

First aid kit



Depending on version, the first aid kit can be stowed in the load compartment.

Load Compartment Grille



Depending on version a partition protects the driver and passengers against the risk of load movement.



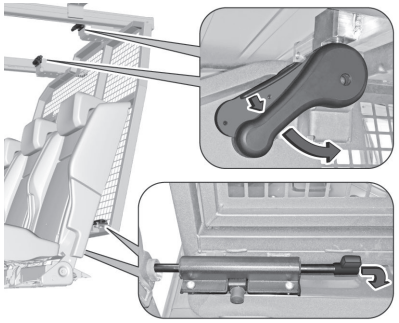
The partition can be placed behind the front or rear seats.



There is a flap in the partition which can be opened to accommodate long objects.

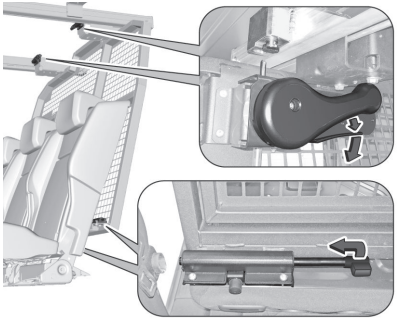
A protective cover is provided in the vehicle to assure safe transportation.
If the side seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open the centre seat has to stay free.
If the backrest of the rear seat is lowered and the flap open to transport long objects, the front passenger seat has to stay free.

Moving the partition



1. Release the four locking devices on the top and the bottom of the partition.

2. To be placed behind the front seats fold down the rear seat backrests



3. Move the partition and lock the four locking devices on the top and the bottom.

⚠ Warning

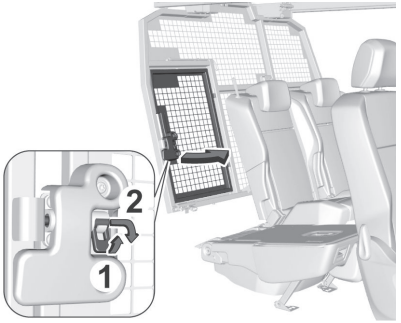
Take care when operating the bottom locking devices. Risk of pinching.

Opening the flap

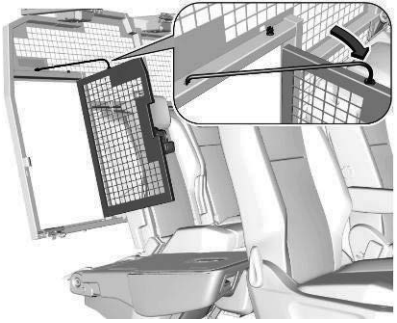
⚠ Warning

Avoid placing loads on the sill bar of the hatch **E**. Whenever possible, place loads on the folded-down seat backrests.
The maximum load on the sill of the hatch **E** is: **20 kg**.

1. Depending on the positioning of the partition and the length of the load fold down the outer rear seat backrest and / or passenger seat backrest



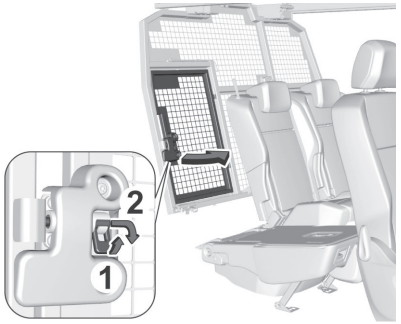
2. Release the locking device of the flap and open the flap.



3. Secure the flap with the rod.

Closing the flap

1. Fix the rod in the bracket.



2. Close the flap and lock the locking device.
3. Restore the seats to the upright position.

⚠ Warning

Do not place loads behind the partition positioned behind row 2, if the backrest of part 2/3 of the bench seat is folded down.

Tip
Avoid placing heavy loads on the folded-down backrest of row 1.
Whenever possible, place heavy loads on the floor.

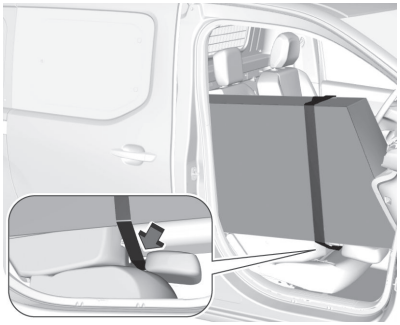
The maximum load permitted on each of the folded backrests of row 2 is: **80 kg**.

Fitting the protective cover

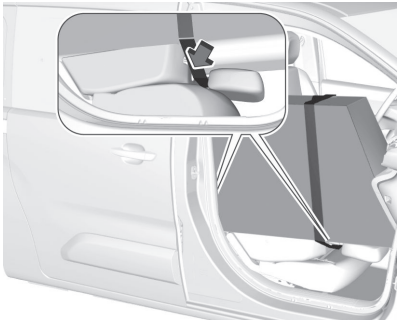
The protective cover must be installed whenever the side seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open.



1. Attach the four snap hooks of the cover on the corresponding lashing eye.
2. Pull the head restraint from the folded backrest, leaving two notches visible on the head restraint rod.
3. Load the objects.



4. Pass the strap of the cover around the head restraint. Tension the strap by pulling at the loose end.



5. If the loading is stored on the front and rear seat at the passenger side pass one strap on each head restraint.

With fitted protective cover the maximum load on each of the folded backrests is **100 kg**.

For the Extenso Cab and the Crew cab

⚠ Warning

Do not place sharp or pointed objects in the protective cover to avoid damaging it.



⚠ Warning

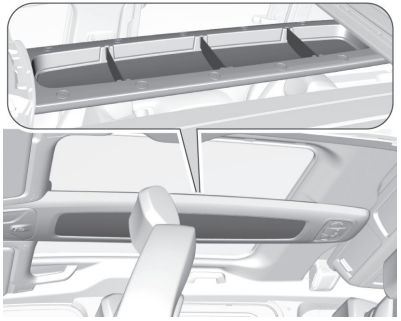
Do not place objects on the dashboard.

Deactivate the front passenger airbag when carrying long objects.
For more information on **Deactivating the front passenger airbag**, refer to the corresponding section.

Overhead Console



Store only lightweight items such as paperwork or maps.



The separation of the four compartments can be taken out.
The maximum permitted load is **6 kg**.

Caution
Ensure that the fabric is not pressed against the roof.

⚠ Warning
Secure objects to prevent them from falling out and causing injury.



Slide the flaps to open.
Close whilst driving. The maximum permitted load is **10 kg**.

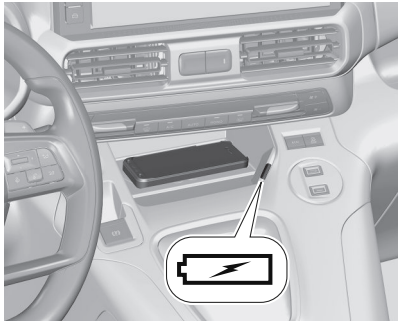


Pull handle to open.
Close whilst driving. The maximum permitted load is **10 kg**.

Inductive Charging

⚠ Warning
Inductive charging can affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or other medical devices. If applicable, seek medical advice before using the inductive charging device.

⚠ Warning
Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile device, as these objects could become very hot.



The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. The charging zone is identified by the Qi symbol.
To charge a device, the ignition must be switched on.
To charge a mobile device:

1. Remove all objects from the charging device.
2. Place the mobile device with the display facing upwards on the charging device in the storage.

⚠ Warning

The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

⚠ Warning

Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged
- Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!



⚠ Warning

When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Steady green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Steady orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.

Charging status is indicated in the LED: illuminates green, when mobile device is charging.
Protective cover for the mobile device could have impact on the inductive charging.
In the event that the mobile device is not charging properly, rotate it 180° and place it on the charging device again.

Cigarette Lighter



The cigarette lighter is freely accessible. Depending on version, the cigarette lighter may be located behind the storage cover. Press cover to open.
Press in cigarette lighter. It switches off automatically once the element is glowing. Pull out cigarette lighter.

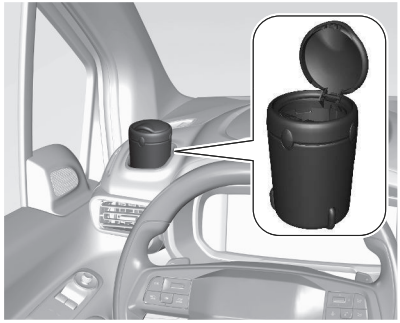
Outside Temperature

The outside temperature is shown in the status bar in the Info Display.
If outside temperature drops to a certain temperature, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

⚠ Warning
The road surface may already be icy even though the display indicates a few degrees above 0 °C.

Ashtrays

Tip
To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish.



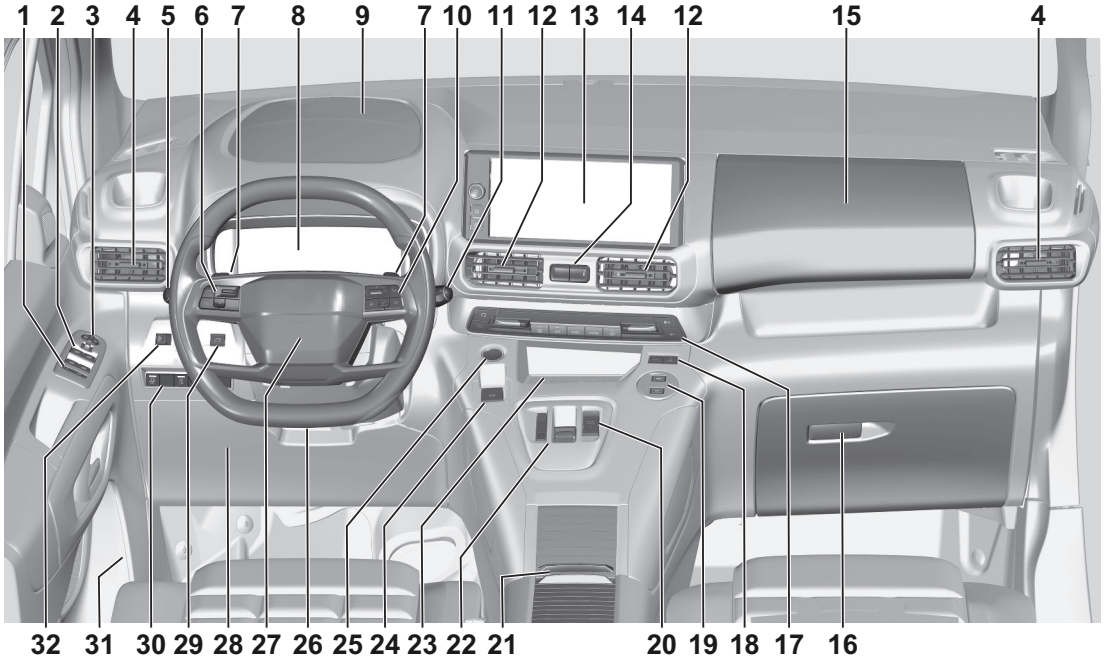
A portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.

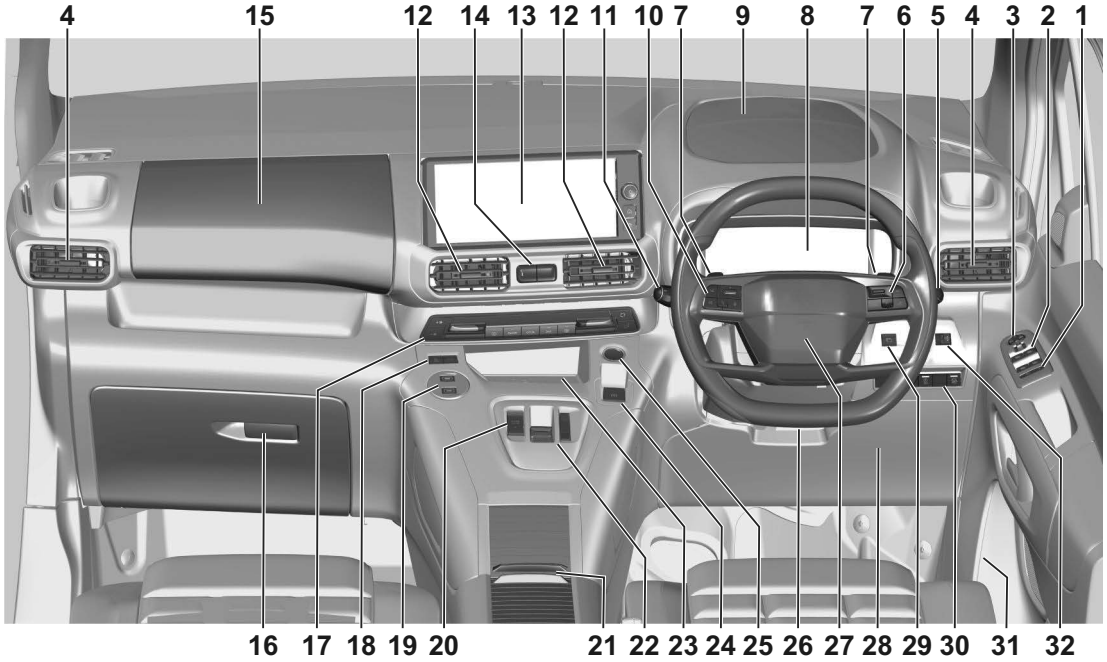
Dashboard Instruments And Control

Instrument Panel Overview....78
Instrument Cluster 80
Gear indicator....80
Odometer 80
Fuel level gauge 81
Speedometer 81
High-voltage battery charge status 81
Trip computer 81
Power flow 82
Smartphone station 82
Widgets 83
Warning lights, gauges and indicators 84
Overview.... 84
Major Fault - Stop The Vehicle.... 86
Airbag Warning Light.... 86
Brake Warning Light.... 87
Door Open Warning Light.... 87
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light.... 87
Oil Pressure Warning Light.... 87
Oil Temperature Warning Light.... 88
Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light.... 88
Service Warning Light.... 88
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light.... 89
Electric Park Brake Applied Light.... 89
Electric Park Brake Warning Light.... 89
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Active Warning Light and Traction Control system.... 90
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) Warning Light.... 90
Low Fuel Warning Light.... 90
Engine Check-Malfunction Indicator (MIL) Warning Light.... 90
High Beam Indicator Light.... 90
Low Beam Indicator Light.... 90
Turn Signal Indicator Light.... 90
Tachometer.... 90
Comfort consumption gauge.... 91
Engine oil level monitor.... 91
High voltage battery temperature high.... 91
Charging system.... 91
System check.... 92
Parking brake.... 92
Automatic operation of electric parking brake off.... 92
Overload indicator.... 92
Descent control system.... 92
Parking assist.... 92
Preheating.... 92
Exhaust filter.... 92
AdBlue®.... 92
Deflation detection system.... 93
Charging cable connected.... 93
Vehicle ready.... 93
Reduced engine power.... 93
Autostop.... 93
Exterior light.... 93
High beam assist.... 93
LED headlights.... 93
Front fog lights.... 93
Rear fog light.... 93
Rain sensor.... 93
Pedestrian safety alert fault.... 93
Side blind spot alert.... 93
Active emergency braking.... 93
Traffic sign assistant.... 94
Driver alert.... 94
Climate controls 94
AC On-Off Control 94
Maximum AC On-Off Control 96
Automatic AC Control 96
Maximum Windshield Demist-Defrost Control 97
Rear Window Demist-Defrost Control 97
Temperature Control 97
Air Fan Speed Control 97
Air vents 98
Temperature Synchronization Control 98
Demisting/de-icing the rear screen and/or the door mirrors 100
Displays.... 101
Info Display 101
Info Displays 101
Rear view display 103
Operating limits.... 104

Instrument Panel Overview

Instrument Panel




4
15
12
14
13
12
11
10
7
9
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32

1 Unlocking tailgate, Child safety system for rear windows

2 Power windows

3 Exterior mirrors

4 Side air vents

5 Turn lights, headlight flash, high beam, high beam assist, exit lighting, parking lights, fog lights

6 Cruise control, speed limiter, adaptive cruise control

7 Manual mode, Regenerative braking mode

8 Driver Information Centre

9 Storage

10 Infotainment controls

11 Windscreen wiper and washer, rear wiper and washer

12 Air vents

13 Info Display

14 Hazard warning flashers, central locking system

15 Storage

16 Glove-box

17 Climate control system

18 Eco mode, Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control

19 USB charging ports

20 Drive modes, selective ride control

21 Storage Inductive charging

22 Selector drive unit, selector automatic transmission

23 Inductive charging

24 Electric parking brake

25 Power button, Ignition switch 26.

26 Steering wheel adjustment

27 Horn

28 Storage

29 Pages button for Driver Information Centre

30 Lane keep assist, Stop & Start system, heated steering wheel, electric child locks, heated windscreen, tire deflation detection system, parking heater, temperature preconditioning, key off mode, side blind spot alert, parking assist

31 Bonnet release lever

32 Instrument illumination

Instrument Cluster

Gear Indicator

▼ or ▲ with with the number beside it is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Odometer

The total recorded distance is displayed in km.

Type A



Type B



Trip odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Two trip odometer pages are selectable in the trip/autonomy information menu for different trips.
Trip odometer counts up to 9,999 km.



Press button for two seconds to reset the trip odometer.

Fuel Level Gauge

Control indicator ● or ⛽ illuminates yellow if the fuel level is low.
Never run the fuel tank dry.
The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler flap is located.
The top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity, due to the remaining fuel in the tank.

Type A



Type B



Speedometer

Indicates vehicle speed.

Type A



Type B



High-Voltage Battery Charge Status

Displays the high-voltage battery state of charge.

Type A



Type B



Trip Computer

The trip computer displays current trip information since the last reset.



Pressing the button displays the following tabs in turn:

- current information
  - total range
  - current consumption
  - time counter for the Stop & Start mode
  - total distance recorder
- trip 1
  - average speed
  - average consumption
  - distance traveled
- trip 2
  - average speed
  - average consumption
  - distance traveled

The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.
To reset a trip, press the button for more than two seconds when the desired trip is displayed.

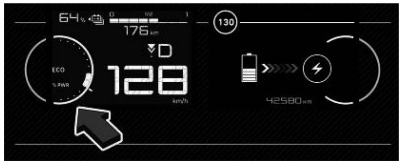
Power Flow

The power indicator gauge informs about the current energy situation of the vehicle.
Charge : High voltage battery is being charged with energy resulting from braking or deceleration of the vehicle.
Eco : An optimum in energy is accessible in all drive modes.
Power : Vehicle is driven in a dynamic driving style with focus on performance.

Type A



Type B



Smartphone Station

The Smartphone Station is operated via the MyOpel App on an external device, such as a mobile phone, that is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth®. The following menus can be selected:

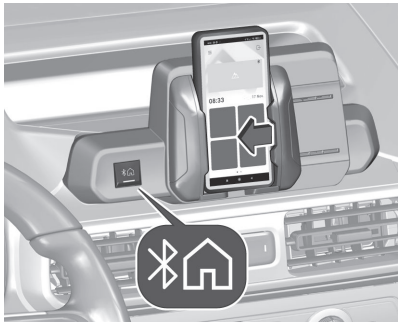
- Library: browse playlists, artists, albums, tracks and directories.
- Phone: make and receive phone calls.
- Web radio: select from various web radio stations.
- Tuner radio: manually search for radio stations.
- Settings: personalise system settings.

⚠ Warning

Always place the smartphone **in a vertical position while driving** so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone.

The smartphone can only be positioned horizontally when the vehicle is stationary.

Installation of the external device



Pull the slide holder to the right, insert the mobile device into the support and fix it with the slide holder.

Pairing a mobile device

Automatic pairing

Open the Bluetooth® menu on the mobile device and activate the function.
The system will automatically search for new devices.
The system always searches for the latest Bluetooth® connections. The searching process may take some time.
Open the Bluetooth® menu on the mobile device.
The LED flashes green to indicate that the Smartphone Station is visible.
If the Bluetooth® connection is ready, the LED on the button illuminates green and the vehicle identification number will be visible in the Bluetooth® menu.

Manual pairing

If the system does not find the mobile device automatically, press and hold button .
The LED flashes green to indicate that the Smartphone Station is visible.
If the Bluetooth® connection is ready, the LED on the button illuminates green and the vehicle identification number will be visible in the Bluetooth® menu.

Tip

The system is not compatible with a tablet or a laptop.

⚠ Warning

Always place the smartphone **in a vertical position while driving** so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone.

The smartphone can only be positioned horizontally when the vehicle is stationary.

Automatic reconnection

The system allows automatic reconnection of smartphone already connected.
When the smartphone is switched on to the Smartphone Station system, the application is automatically launched on the smartphone via a NFC chip communication**.
The NFC communication must be activated on the smartphone **
Depending on smartphone.

Widgets

A widget is the indication of specific information or gauge, e.g. radio information, navigation information or the engine coolant temperature gauge.



The Driver Information Centre can display one widget per page, the Info Display can contain several widgets.

To add a widget to a page, touch .

Some widgets are available in different sizes. The bigger a widget is, the less widgets can be displayed on a page.

Warning lights, gauges and indicators

Overview

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.
The control indicator colours mean:

red	danger, important reminder
yellow	warning, information, fault
green	confirmation of activation
blue	confirmation of activation
white	confirmation of activation
grey	system paused, at least one system limitation has been detected

Control indicators are located in Info Display.

Overview

The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.
1 : only for information
2 : information and warning
3 : seek the assistance of a workshop
4 : stop engine and seek the assistance of a workshop
5 : have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop

Red warning and indicator lights



STOP

(4)



Maximum coolant temperature

(4)



Engine oil pressure (ICE)

(4)



System malfunction (BEV)

(5)



Cable connected (BEV)

(2)



Traction battery overheating or malfunction (BEV)

(4)



12 V battery charge

(4)



Door(s) open

(2)



Seat belts not fastened/unfastened

(2)



Electric parking brake

(5)

If flashing (1) then (2)



Braking

(4)

Orange warning and indicator lights



Service

(5)



Engine preheating (Diesel)

(1)



Particle filter (Diesel)

(3)



Water in fuel filter (Diesel)

(2)



Low fuel level (ICE)

(2)



Low traction battery level (BEV)

(4)



Tortoise mode with limited driving range (BEV)

(2)



Pedestrian horn (BEV)

(3)



Engine self-diagnostic system (ICE)

(5)



Engine self-diagnostic system (ICE)

(4)



AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

(1)



Automatic functions of the electric parking brake (OFF)



Electric parking brake

(5)



Braking

(4)



Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake

If accompanied by a message and an audio signal, (3)



Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

(2)



Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Antislip regulation (ASR)

(2)



Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Antislip regulation (ASR) (OFF)

(2)



Road signs recognition

(2)/(3)



Lane keeping assist

(2)



Driver attention by camera (Distraction detection)

(2)/(3)



Airbags/active bonnet

(5)



Front passenger airbag (ON)



Front passenger air-bag (OFF)



Tyre under-inflation detection

(2)/(3)



Parking sensors

(1)



Stop & Start (OFF)



Automatic headlight dipping

(1)



Rear fog lights

Green warning and indicator lights



Stop & Start (ICE)



Vehicle ready to drive (BEV)

(1)



Hill Assist Descent Control

(2)



Direction indicators

(1)



Daytime running lights/ sidelights

(1)



Dipped beam headlights

(1)



Automatic headlight dipping

(1)



Front fog lights

(1)

Blue warning and indicator lights



Main beam headlights

(1)

Black/white warning and indicator lights



Foot on the brake



Foot on the clutch (ICE)

Major Fault - Stop The Vehicle

STOP illuminates red.
Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.
Illuminates together with other control indicators, accompanied by a warning chime and a corresponding message in the Driver Information Centre.
Stop engine immediately and seek the assistance of a workshop.

Airbag Warning Light

 illuminates red.
When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for approx. four seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not extinguish after four seconds

or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a workshop. The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.
Deployment of the belt pretensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous illumination of .

⚠ Warning
Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Airbag deactivation



illuminates yellow.
The front passenger airbag is activated.
OFF illuminates yellow.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Brake Warning Light

illuminates red.
The brake and clutch fluid level is too low.

⚠ Warning
Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.

Door Open Warning Light

illuminates red.
A door or the tailgate is open.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

Displays the coolant temperature.
The red zone indicates that the operating temperature of the engine is too high.
Tip
If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

Type A



Type B



Oil Pressure Warning Light

illuminates red.
Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

⚠ Warning
Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and / or locking of the drive wheels.

1. Select neutral gear.
2. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
3. Switch off the ignition.

⚠ Warning
When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer. During an Autostop, the brake servo unit will still be operational. Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Keep engine turned off and let the vehicle be towed to a workshop.

Oil Temperature Warning Light

● illuminates red.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine.

Caution
Coolant temperature too high.

If there is sufficient coolant, consult a workshop.

Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light

illuminates or flashes in the instrument cluster. Additionally, there is an indication in the roof console.

The big symbols refer to the seat belts of the front seats, the small symbols refer to the second row rear seats.



- When the ignition is switched on, in the instrument cluster and the symbols in the roof console come on for a short time. For the front seats, in the instrument cluster and the symbols in the roof console illuminate until seat belt is fastened.
- When driving faster than 20 km/h (12 mph) and a seat belt is unfastened, the symbol in the roof console for the respective seat flashes and a chime is audible. For the second row rear seats, this only applies if at least one rear seat belt was previously fastened.

Additionally, illuminates in the instrument cluster.
After two minutes the chime goes off and in the roof console illuminates constantly until the seat belt of the respective seat is fastened.

Service Warning Light

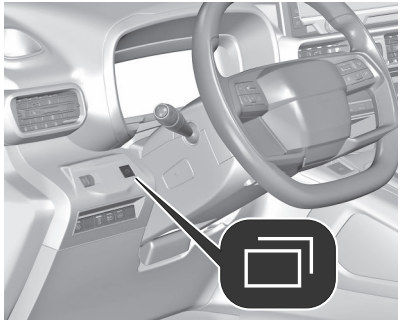
The service system informs the driver when to change the engine oil and filter or a vehicle service is required. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change is required can vary considerably.
A required service due is displayed in the Driver Information Centre for seven seconds after switching on the ignition.
If no service is required for the next 3000 km (1800 mi) or more, no service information appears in the display.
If service is required within the next 3000 km (1800 mi), the remaining distance or time duration is indicated for several seconds. Simultaneously illuminates permanently as reminder.
If service is required in less than 1000 km (600 mi), flashes and then illuminates permanently. Remaining distance or time duration is indicated for several seconds.
Overdued service is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre which indicates the overdued

distance. flashes and then illuminates permanently until service is executed.

Reset of service interval

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to ensure proper functionality. It is recommended to seek the assistance of a workshop.
If service is executed by yourself, operate as following:

- switch off ignition



- press and hold the button
- switch on ignition, the distance indication begins a countdown
- when the display indicates =0, release the button again

The symbol disappears.

Retrieving service information

The status of the service information can be retrieved at any time via the Info Display. Press Check in the vehicle settings menu. The service information is displayed for a few seconds.

Service vehicle soon

/ illuminates yellow.
Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.
May illuminate together with other control indicators and a corresponding message in the Driver Information Centre.
Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Illuminates permanently when the ignition is switched on.
A fault of the electric engine or the high voltage battery has been detected.
Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

illuminates yellow.
Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.
If the control indicator does not extinguish after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

Electric Park Brake Applied Light

illuminates or flashes red.

Illuminates

Electric parking brake is applied.

Flashes

Electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application or the release are faulty.

⚠ Warning
Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Electric Park Brake Warning Light

illuminates yellow.

Illuminates

Electric parking brake has a fault .

⚠ Warning
Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Active Warning Light And Traction Control System

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system.

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) Warning Light

illuminates green or yellow, or flashes yellow.

Illuminates green

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

Illuminates yellow

The system approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn light in that direction.

Flashes yellow

The system recognizes that the lane is departed significantly.

Low Fuel Warning Light

● illuminates yellow.
Level in fuel tank is too low.

Engine Check-Malfunction Indicator (MIL) Warning Light

illuminates or flashes yellow.
Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Fault in the emission control system.The permitted emission limits may be exceeded. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Flashes when the engine is running

Fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

High Beam Indicator Light

illuminates blue.
Illuminates when high beam is on, during headlight flash.

Low Beam Indicator Light

illuminates green.
Illuminated when low beam is on.

Turn Signal Indicator Light

illuminates or flashes green.

Illuminates briefly

The parking lights are switched on.

Flashes

Turn lights or the hazard warning flashers are activated.
Rapid flashing: failure of a turn light or associated fuse, failure of turn light on trailer.

Tachometer

Displays the engine speed.
Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

Caution
If the indicator is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. The engine can be damaged.

Type A



Type B



Comfort Consumption Gauge

The comfort consumption gauge informs about the current electric consumption caused by the following thermal consumers:

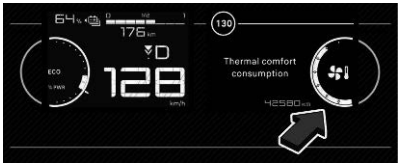
- heating
- air conditioning
- heated windscreen
- heated rear window
- heated seats

If the drive mode Eco mode is selected, the performance of the thermal consumers is reduced.

Type A



Type B



Engine Oil Level Monitor

The state of the engine oil level is displayed in the Driver Information Centre for a few seconds following the service information after switching on the ignition.
A proper state of engine oil level is confirmed.

If engine oil level is low, flashes and warning message is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.
Depending on the version, flashes in the Driver Information Centre. Confirm engine oil level by using the oil dipstick and top up engine oil respectively.
A fault of measurement is indicated by or a message in the Driver Information Centre together with . Check engine oil level manually by using the dipstick.

High Voltage Battery Temperature High

illuminates red.
Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.
Illuminates together with other control indicators, accompanied by a warning chime and a corresponding message in the Driver Information Centre.
Stop engine immediately and evacuate the vehicle.

Charging System

illuminates red.
Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off the engine. The vehicle battery is not charging. The engine cooling may be interrupted. The brake servo unit may cease to be effective. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

System Check

illuminates yellow or red.

Illuminates yellow

A minor engine fault has been detected.

Illuminates red

A major engine fault has been detected. Stop engine as soon as possible and seek the assistance of a workshop.

Parking Brake

illuminates red.
Illuminates when the manual parking brake is applied and ignition is switched on .

Automatic Operation Of Electric Parking Brake Off

illuminates yellow.

Illuminates

Automatic operation is deactivated or faulty. In the event of a fault, o illuminates together with other control indicators or it is accompanied by a corresponding message in the Driver Information Centre.
Activate automatic operation again or have the cause remedied by a workshop in the event of a fault.

Overload Indicator

⚠ Illuminates.
Illuminates when the overload indicator detects an exceeding of the maximum authorised weight.

Descent Control System

illuminates or flashes green.

Iluminates green

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

Flashes green

The system is in operation.

Parking Assist

flashes yellow as soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle.
illuminates yellow.
The system is deactivated.

Preheating

illuminates yellow.
Preheating of diesel engine is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low. Start the engine when control indicator extinguishes.

Exhaust Filter

or illuminates yellow, accompanied by a message in the Driver Information Centre.
The exhaust filter requires cleaning. Continue driving until the control indicator extinguishes.

Illuminates temporarily

Start of saturation of the exhaust filter. Start cleaning process as soon as possible by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h (37 mph).

Illuminates constantly

Indication of a low additive level. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

AdBlue®

flashes or illuminates yellow.

Illuminates yellow

The remaining driving range is between 800 km and 2400 km (480 mi - 1500 mi).

Flashes yellow

The remaining driving range is between 0 km and 800 km (0 mi - 480 mi).
AdBlue® level is low.
Refill AdBlue® soon to avoid prevention of the engine start.

Deflation Detection System

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

Tyre pressure loss in one or more wheels. Stop immediately and check tire pressure.

Flashes

Fault in system. Consult a workshop.

Charging Cable Connected

illuminates red.
The vehicle plug of the charging cable is still connected to the charge port.
The vehicle cannot be started.
Disconnect the vehicle plug from the charge port and close the charge port flap.

Vehicle Ready

READY illuminates green.
The vehicle is ready to be driven.

Reduced Engine Power

illuminates yellow.
The charging level of the high-voltage battery is low. Only reduced engine power is available.

Autostop

illuminates or flashes green.

Illuminates green

Engine is in an Autostop.

Flashes green

Autostop is temporarily unavailable, or Autostop mode is invoked automatically.

Exterior Light

illuminates green.
The exterior lights are on.

High Beam Assist

illuminates green.
The high beam assist is activated.

LED Headlights

illuminates and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Front Fog Lights

illuminates green.
The front fog lights are on.

Rear Fog Light

illuminates yellow.
The rear fog light is on.

Rain Sensor

illuminates green.
Illuminated when rain sensor position on wiper lever is selected.

Pedestrian Safety Alert Fault

illuminates yellow.
The pedestrian safety alert is not working.

Side Blind Spot Alert

illuminates continuously in the instrument cluster.
The system is active.

Active Emergency Braking

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

The system has been deactivated or a fault has been detected.

Additionally, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Check the reason of the deactivation and in case of a system fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard.

Traffic Sign Assistant

illuminates for a few seconds or permanently.

Illuminates for a few seconds

Illuminates for a few seconds If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit provided by the traffic sign assistant, the speed limit displayed in the Driver Information Centre flashes and an audible signal is given. If flashing and audible signal are deactivated, illuminates for a few seconds.

Illuminates permanently

If the traffic sign assistant has a failure, illuminates permanently.
Consult a workshop.

Driver Alert

illuminates yellow.
The driver alert is deactivated.

Climate controls

AC On-Off Control

Heating and Ventilation System



Controls for:

- **A/C** to switch on cooling.
  A/C again to switch off cooling.
- temperature
- , and air distribution
- fan speed
- air recirculation
- REAR heated rear window and exterior mirrors
- heated seats

Restriction
Contains R134A fluorinated greenhouse gases

Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system may contain R134A fluorinated greenhouse gases.

Temperature

Adjust the temperature by turning to the desired temperature.

HI	warm
LO	cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air distribution

to windscreen and front door windows
to head area via adjustable air vents
to foot well and windscreen
All combinations are possible.

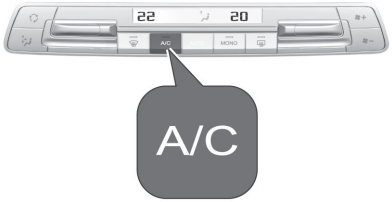
Fan speed



Adjust the air flow by turning to the desired speed.

clockwise	increase
anticlockwise	decreasecold

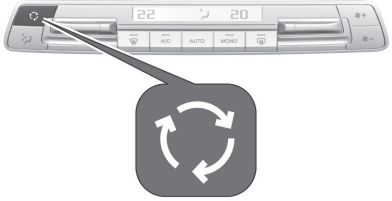
Cooling A/C



Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and fan is switched on.
Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.
If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.
Activated cooling may inhibit Autostops (Stop & Start).

Air recirculation system



Press to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

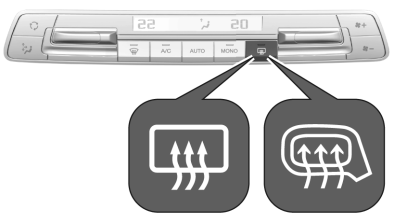
Press again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode.
In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside.
The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

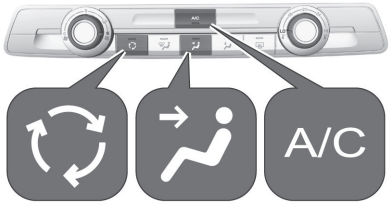
Demisting and defrosting



- Press the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature controller to warmest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Switch on heated rear window REAR.
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Switch off demisting/de-icing as soon as you no longer consider it necessary, as decreased power consumption in turn reduces energy consumption. Demisting/de-icing only operates with the engine running.

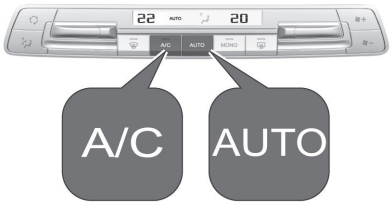
Maximum AC On-Off Control



Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.

- Switch on cooling A/C.
- Press for air recirculation system on.
- Press for air distribution.
- Set temperature control to coldest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.

Automatic AC Control



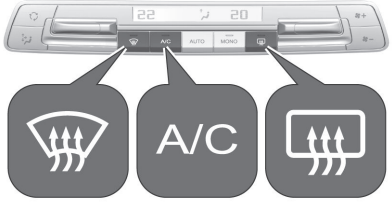
Basic setting for maximum comfort:

1. Press AUTO, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
2. Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
3. Air conditioning must be activated for optimal cooling and demisting. Press A/C to switch on air conditioning. The LED in the button indicates activation.
4. Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary ring. Recommended temperature is 22 °C.

Press successively AUTO to select the desired automatic settings:

1. Soft Auto for a soft and silent air distribution.
2. Auto for thermal comfort and silent air distribution.
3. Auto Fast for a dynamic and efficient air distribution.

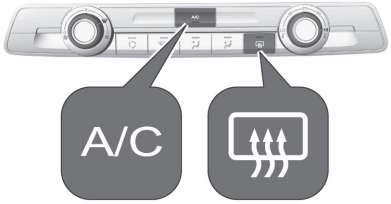
Maximum Windshield Demist-Defrost Control



- Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Air conditioning and automatic mode are automatically switched on. The LED in the button A/C illuminates, AUTO is shown in the display.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.

Note
If is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop (Stop & Start) will be inhibited until is pressed again.
If is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop (Stop & Start) , the engine will restart automatically

Rear Window Demist-Defrost Control



- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Set temperature controller to warmest level.
- Switch on cooling A/C, if required.
- Switch on heated rear window REAR.
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door window

Tip
If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected, an Autostop may be inhibited.
If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Temperature Control

Adjust the temperature by turning to the desired temperature.

HI	warm
LO	cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air Fan Speed Control

Adjust the air flow by turning to the desired speed.

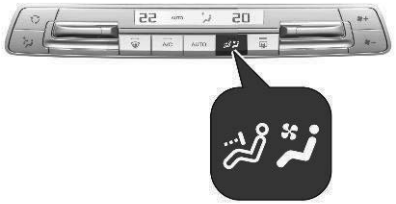
clockwise	increase
anticlockwise	decreasecold

Air Vents

⚠ Warning

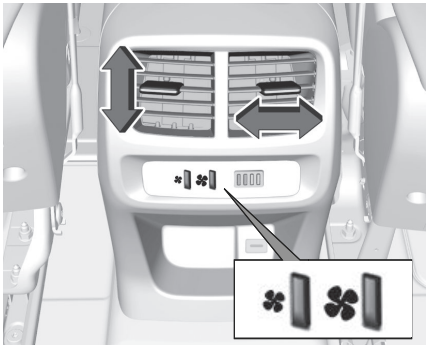
Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Rear air vents in the centre console

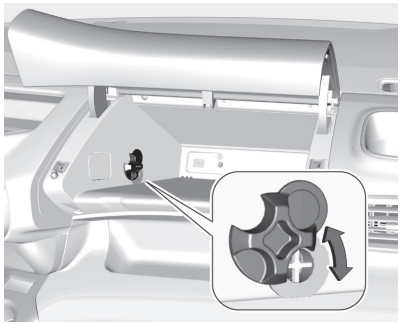


To activate the distribution of climatised / heated air via the rear air vents, press .





Air vent in the glovebox



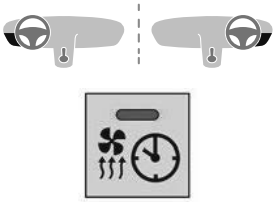
Turn the slider up or down in order to close or open the air vent.

Fixed air vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen, the door windows and in the foot wells.

Temperature Synchronization Control

The Temperature Synchronization Control allows to heat the vehicle's interior and to ventilate the vehicle's interior with ambient air.
The temperature preconditioning can be programmed using the Infotainment system.



The operating status of the temperature preconditioning is shown by an indicator with an LED.

- LED illuminates: A timer has been set.
- LED flashes: The system is operating.

The LED is extinguished at the end of the heating /ventilation operation or when the

temperature preconditioning is stopped using the remote control.

Note

The temperature preconditioning is only activated if the ignition is off and the vehicle is locked.

If the charging level of the high voltage battery is below 30%, the temperature preconditioning is not activated.

When the vehicle is plugged in, battery charging takes precedence over pre-conditioning.

Consequently, it can only be activated if the battery is charged above a threshold fixed at 80%.

If a recurrent heating / ventilation is programmed and two heating / ventilation procedures are carried out without operating the vehicle, the programming is deactivated 60 minutes have elapsed between two heating requests.

Setting timer

Note

Several timers can be programmed and saved. It is recommended to programme temperature preconditioning with the vehicle plugged in, in order to optimise the long-term perfomance of the high voltage battery.

Depending on the infotainment system, there are different ways to use programmable charging via the Info Display:

Type A

Touch on the Info Display to open the climate settings.

Touch **OPTIONS**.

Touch or select the menu for temperature preconditioning.

Touch + to define a new timer.

Touch --:--.

Enter time and day.

Press ✓ to confirm the settings.

Press **ON** to activate the timer.

To delete a timer, press at the top of the Info Display and delete the desired timer.

Confirm the deletion.

The heating / ventilation procedure starts approx. 45 minutes with a Diesel, 30 minutes with a petrol engine before the programmed time, and is maintained 10 minutes after it.

This pre-conditioning time lasts up to 45 min.

with a Diesel engine and up to 30 min. with a petrol engine.

Type B



Touch on the Info Display to open the climate settings.

Touch and then select the preconditioning settings menu.

Select + to define a new timer or touch next to a timer to edit it.

Activate the timer.

To delete a timer, select the desired timer and press at the lower left corner of the screen.

The heating / ventilation procedure starts approx. 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is plugged in, or 20 minutes before the programmed time when it is not plugged in, and is maintained 10 minutes after it.

Type C



Short press: display the settings of the vehicle.
Toggle up or down and select the climate settings menu. Press the toggle to confirm the selection.
Select the preconditioning settings menu and select one of the following options:

- New Precondition
- Already existing precondition

Press the toggle to define a new timer. Select time and date and press the toggle to confirm.
Press the toggle to activate the timer.

⚠ Warning

Programmable heating is supplied by the vehicle fuel tank. Before use, make sure that you have sufficient fuel. If the fuel tank is on reserve, you are strongly recommended not to programme the heating.



The additional heating must always be switched off while refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

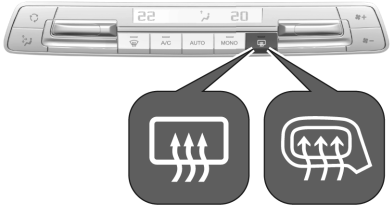
⚠ Warning

To avoid the risk of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) - Risk of fire!

⚠ Warning

Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places.
Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces - Risk of burns!

Demisting/De-Icing The Rear Screen And/Or The Door Mirrors



Press one of these buttons to switch on/off 3 rear screen and door mirror demisting/de-icing (depending on version).
The indicator lamp in the button comes on when the function is activated.
Demisting/de-icing switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

Restriction

Switch off demisting / defrosting as soon as you no longer consider it necessary, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

Tip

Demisting/de-icing only operates with the engine running.

Displays

Info Display

The Info Display is located in the instrument cluster.
Depending on the version, different instrument clusters are available.
In addition to warning lights, gauges and indicators, the following information is available:

- trip odometer
- gear shift indication
- service information
- vehicle and warning messages
- driver assistance messages
- pop-up messages
- infotainment information

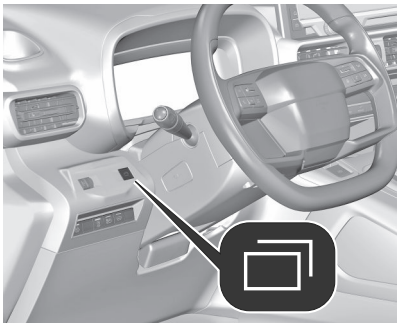
Type A



Type B



Pages



Press the button to scroll through several on-board pages or to close a pop-up message.

Personalisation

The Instrument Cluster can be personalized via the menu in the Info Display.



Several pages can be created by choosing widgets to be displayed.

Info Displays

The Info Displays can indicate:

- time.
- outside temperature.
- date.
- Infotainment system.
- indication of rear view camera.
- indication of panoramic view system.
- indication of parking assist instructions.
- navigation.
- vehicle and system messages.
- settings for vehicle personalisation .

Navigation System / Multimedia Pro



Selecting menus and settings

There are three options to operate the display:

- via buttons beside the display
- via touchscreen
- via the voice assistant

Button and touch operation

1. Press to switch on the display.
2. Press to display the home screen.
3. Press to select vehicle settings or driving functions.

Touch required menu display icon or a function with the finger.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.
Touch ← or ✖ on the display to exit a menu without changing a setting.

Personalisation

The Info Display can be personalized via the personalisation menu.



Several pages can be created by choosing widgets to be displayed.

Energy flow

This menu displays the current energy flow within the electric system.
The components will be highlighted when they are active.

1. Press
2. Touch
3. Select Energy Flow.

Different colors show which engine is used and whether energy is regenerated.

- green: regenerating energy
- blue: electric engine operating

Multimedia



Selecting menus and settings

There are three options to operate the display:

- via buttons beside the display
- via touchscreen
- via the voice assistant

Button and touch operation

1. Press to switch on the display.
2. Press to display the home screen.
3. Press to select vehicle settings or driving functions.

Touch required menu display icon or a function with the finger.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.
Touch ← or ✖ on the display to exit a menu without changing a setting.

Energy flow

Note
On vehicles equipped with the Multimedia infotainment system, this menu can only be used via the MyOpel App.

Smartphone station



Operate via touchscreen of the mobile device.

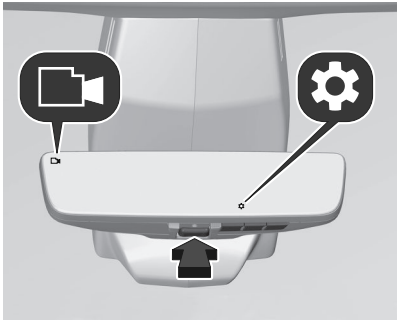
Rear View Display

The rear view display is located at the position of the interior mirror.

If switched on, the rear view display can show two different views, one of the camera above the rear door and on of the camera under the side of the right mirror:

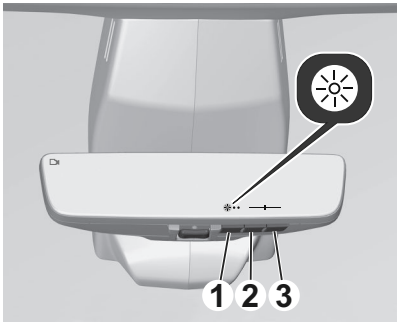
- rear view
- rear view and passenger side view

Switching on and off



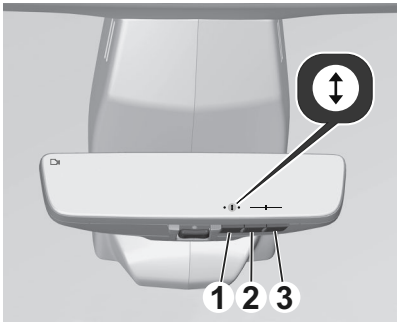
Press button to switch on and off.
If activated, a camera symbol appears in the upper left corner.

Setting the brightness



1. Press (**1**) to open the settings .
2. Press once again to open the brightness menu.
3. Press (**2**) to decrease brightness.
4. Press (**3**) to increase brightness.
5. Brightness levels from one to five, preset level is three.
6. The selected level is highlighted in the slider menu on the display.
7. To close the settings, press (**1**) until they are closed.

Setting the angle



1. Press (**1**) to open the settings .
2. Press once again to open the brightness menu.
3. Press (**2**) to decrease brightness.
4. Press (**3**) to increase brightness.
5. Brightness levels from one to five, preset level is three.
6. The selected level is highlighted in the slider menu on the display.
7. To close the settings, press (**1**) until they are closed.

Auto dimming

The brightness of the display is adapted to the environment by automatic dimming.

Memorization of settings value

The user setting and the on/off mode is memorized after the ignition is switched off.

Selecting a view

If the setting menu is not activated:

1. by pressing button (**3**)

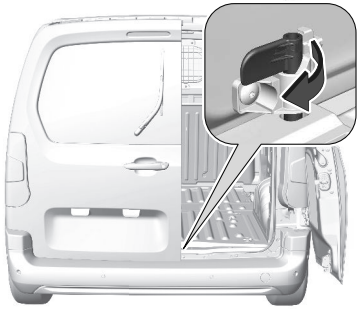


2. by pressing the button on the lever.

Fault

In the event of a fault, the display will be grey with the camera symbol shown crossed out.
On the rear view display an illustration shows how to switch off the rear view display.

The display will also be grey and appears in the display, if a door is opened.



In exceptional case of transporting long objects in the load compartment with the need to have the right-hand rear door open, assure that the left door is closed and mechanically locked.
For further driving with the right-hand rear door open, the latest display view can be re-opened by long press on button (**3**).

Operating Limits

The system may be disrupted (or even damaged) and not work in the following situations:
– Installation of a bicycle carrier on the tailgate or side-hinged door (depending on version).
– Attachment of a trailer to the towball.
– Driving with a door open.

⚠ Warning
Please note, the camera must not be obscured (by a sticker, a bicycle carrier, etc.).

Infotainment system

Menu 106
Profiles 108
Updating The System 109
Customisation 109
Cybersecurity..... 109
Privacy settings..... 109
Radio 110
Choosing The Media 110
Choosing The Radio Frequency 111
Selecting A Radio Station 111
Memorizing A Radio Station 111
Audio Settings 112
Activating Traffic Announcements..... 112
Audio..... 113
Multimedia system 114
General information..... 114
Steering wheel controls 118
Voice Commands 118
Navigation 118
Connectivity 120
Phone 120
Media..... 123
Multimedia Pro 126
Multimedia Pro..... 126
Basic operation..... 128
Audio..... 130
External devices..... 131
Speech recognition..... 131
Phone 131

Menu



Short press: switch the system on / off or mute the sound.
Long press: switch to standby mode.
Rotate: adjust the volume.

Displays the home screen.

Displays the menu for the driver assistant systems.

Displays the menu for the climate settings.

Displays the audio menu.

Displays the phone menu.
Displays the phone projection screen when phone projection is active.

Displays the navigation menu.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses: https://www.opel.com/tools/oss-source-codes.html
The system transmits and/or receives radio waves subject to the Directive 2014/53/EU.
The manufacturers of the mentioned system declare the conformity with the Directive 2014/53/EU.

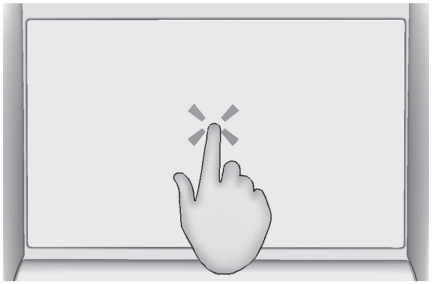
Screen operations

The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

Caution
Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

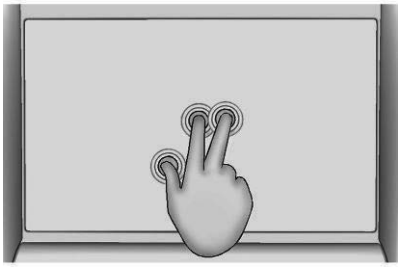
Use the following finger gestures to control the Infotainment system.

Touch



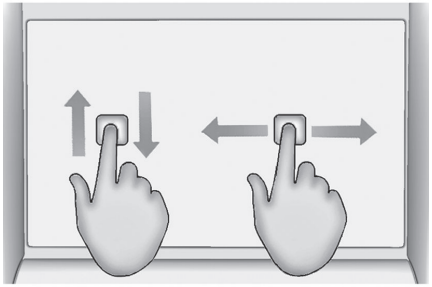
Touch is used to open a menu or select an option.

Three finger quick access



Touch is used to display the apps overview.

Swipe



Swipe is used to scroll through a menu or to pan the map.

Returning to the previous screen in a submenu

To return to the previous screen, touch ← in the upper part of the screen.

Displaying and hiding the menu

Within an app, the menu can be displayed and hidden by touching ☰.

Status bar

The status bar is the top bar on the screen. It can indicate the following:

- time
- outside temperature
- Wi-Fi connection status
- Bluetooth® activation
- mobile reception
- activated functions, e.g. A/C

Apps overview



To display a list of all available apps, touch ⊞.

Alternatively, the apps overview will be displayed by a 3-finger touch on the screen.

System settings

To display the system settings menu, open the app ⚙ and touch the menu for the system settings 🌐.



The following system settings can be adjusted:

- language
- date and time, time format, date format
- unit for distance and consumption
- unit for outside temperature
- restore the factory settings
- view system information

Brightness

To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination and the interior lighting, open the app ⚙ and touch the menu for the brightness adjustment.

The interior lighting can also be activated or deactivated.

Connectivity

To display the connectivity menu, open the app ⚙ and touch the menu for connectivity.
The following settings are adjustable:

- display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth® or phone projection) and search for nearby devices
- activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network
- activate or deactivate data and location sharing for authorised services

Profiles

Several user profiles can be created. Due to the option of creating profiles, the Infotainment system can be fitted to several drivers. Different settings as well as saved radio stations and destinations will be connected to a specific profile. Thereby, the settings don't need to be adjusted every time another person is driving the vehicle.

To display the profile settings, open the app ⚙ and touch the profile menu.

Creating a profile

The "Guest" profile has a default display with the possibility of adding to it and/or returning it to its initial configuration. This profile is built into the system and cannot be deleted.

To create a new profile, touch +.
The following settings can be adjusted for each profile:

- profile name
- avatar
- associated device

Once a new profile is created, the profile settings can be changed at any time by touching ⚙.

Deleting a profile

To delete a profile, touch ⚙ next to the corresponding profile and select 🗑. The guest profile cannot be deleted.
The guest profile is a default profile. It is active when no other profile is created or active.

Updating The System

When an update is available and ready to install, a message will be displayed at the end of a trip after stopping the vehicle.

Alternatively, open the app ⚙ and touch the menu for updates to check if an update is available. If available, pending updates will be displayed on the screen.
It is possible to activate automatic downloads of updates by touching the checkbox. If activated, the updates will be automatically downloaded when the vehicle is connected to an external Wi-Fi network.
The installation of an update will continue even if the vehicle will be left and closed.
When the vehicle has started again, a message will be displayed on the screen if the installation of the update has been successfully finished.
When the installation has been failed, a corresponding message will be displayed on the screen. Contact an assistance centre.

Customisation

The Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be personalised.

To display the personalisation menu, open the settings application ⚙ and touch the menu for customisation.

Screen color

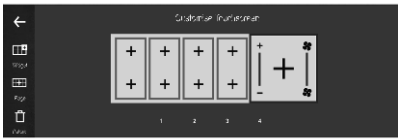
The background color of the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be chosen. The chosen background color will immediately be shown in both the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display.

Sound ambience

An active sport sound for the sport mode can be activated or deactivated.

Pages

Several personalised pages for the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be created.



Each page can be personalised by choosing the widgets to be displayed.

To add a page, touch ⊞.
To delete a page, drag and drop the respective page to 🗑.

Cybersecurity

The privacy settings can be set via the connectivity menu within the settings app ⚙. Alternatively, the privacy settings can be set via the status bar by touching ⇅.
The privacy settings can be set for each profile. The following privacy settings can be set:

- share data and location
- share data
- private mode

To use all available connected services without restrictions, it is necessary to share data and location.
When the private mode is activated, connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

Connected services

To display the menu for connected services, open the app ⚙ and touch the corresponding menu entry.

Privacy Settings

The "Privacy Settings" management is associated with each profile. This function is used with: a "Guest" profile configured by default in "Private Mode",

or a profile to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device.
For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy mode saved value will be restored.



"Sharing Data and Location"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

Tip

The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.



"Sharing Data"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

Tip

Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

Tip

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).



"Private Mode"

This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.

Tip

Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

Tip

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).

Tip

Professional purposes

If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

To change mode, swipe down from the upper edge of the Info Display to display all of the quick settings.



Press this button and select the chosen mode. The mode is highlighted.

OR



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.



Select **"Privacy Settings".**



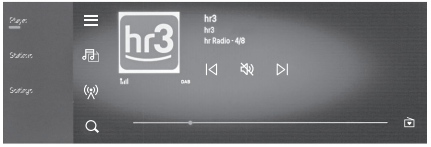
Choose the mode.

Radio

Choosing The Media

Display the audio screen by touching ♫ in the apps overview.

Touch 📻 to switch between the radio and a connected external device as the audio source.



Choosing The Radio Frequency

To tune into a specific radio frequency, touch .
A number pad will be displayed.
Enter the desired frequency and touch ✓ to confirm.

Waveband

To select the waveband, touch .

Selecting A Radio Station

Touch ▶| briefly to perform an automatic search for the next radio station.

Touch and hold ▶| to perform a quick search for the next radio stations.

Touch |◀ briefly to perform an automatic search for the previous radio station.

Touch and hold |◀ to perform a quick search for the previous radio stations.

Manual station search

Press and hold < or >.
Release when the required frequency has almost been reached.
A search is made for the next station that can be received and it is played automatically.

Station list

All available radio stations will be displayed as a list by touching the list entry in the radio menu on the left side of the screen.

Storing favorite stations

Up to 24 radio stations of all wavebands can be stored as favorites in the **Presets** list.
Touch Presets to display the preset buttons.

Storing the currently active station

Touch and hold the desired button in the **Presets** list for a few seconds. The respective frequency or station name is displayed on the button.
If a station is already stored on a preset button, that station will be overwritten by the new one.
Alternatively, touch ★ Mem in the radio main menu to store the currently active station.

Storing a station from a station list

Select List and then select the desired station.
To store a station from the station list, briefly touch ★ next to the desired station. The station is stored and the number of the preset button will be displayed. To delete a station, touch ★ again.
Alternatively, touch and hold the name of the station until it is stored.
To delete the station, touch and hold the name of the station again until a corresponding message is displayed.

Retrieving stations

In the radio main menu select **Presets** and then briefly touch the preset button of the desired station.

Memorizing A Radio Station

To save the current radio station, touch to get to the station line up and then touch + in the lower part of the screen.
Buttons which are already used for radio stations can be overwritten.
Unused buttons for saving radio stations will be indicated by +.
Alternatively, radio stations can be saved by touching the corresponding heart icon in the station list.

Saved radio stations will be displayed or hidden by touching .
The saved radio stations will be lined up in the lower part of the screen.
Touch the desired radio station to tune in.

Audio Settings

Touch , select **OPTIONS** and then select **Audio settings** to open the respective menu.

Tone

Several predefined settings are available to optimize the tone for a specific style of music (e.g. **Pop- Rock** or **Classical**).
To adjust the tone individually, select **User**. Change the settings as desired.
To return to the default factory settings, select .

Balance and fader

Several predefined settings are available to adjust the volume distribution inside the vehicle (e.g. **All passengers** or **Front only**).
To adjust the settings individually, move the cursor on the screen to the desired point.
To return to the default factory settings, select .

Sound

It is possible to activate or deactivate Volume linked to speed or Touch tones.

Activating Traffic Announcements

Many RDS stations broadcast traffic news. If the traffic announcements function is activated, radio or media playback is interrupted for the duration of a traffic announcement.
To activate traffic announcements, go to the **OPTIONS** menu and activate **TA**.
If **TA** is activated, **TA** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

Activating RDS

In the radio main menu, touch **OPTIONS** and activate **RDS**.
If **RDS** is activated, **RDS** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

Radio text

If RDS is activated, information on the radio programme currently active or the music track currently playing are displayed below the programme name.
To show or hide the information, go to the **OPTIONS** menu and activate or deactivate **Information.**

Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) broadcasts radio stations digitally.
DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency.

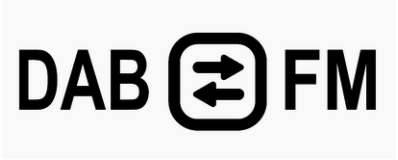
FM-DAB Linking

This function enables switching from an FM station to a corresponding DAB station and vice versa.
Switching from FM to DAB occurs as soon as a corresponding DAB station is available. Therefore, it is recommended to store favorite stations as DAB stations to reduce frequent switching.
Switching from DAB to FM occurs if the signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver and the corresponding FM station is available.
Note
After switching, the volume might be different.

Activation

Precondition is that **RDS** is activated before FM-DAB Linking can be activated.
To activate FM-DAB Linking, select **OPTIONS** in the radio main menu and then select **FM-DAB Follow-up.**

The following symbol will be displayed when FM-DAB Linking is activated:



Deactivation

To deactivate FM-DAB Linking, select **OPTIONS** in the radio main menu and then deselect **FM-DAB Follow-up.** FM-DAB Linking will automatically be deactivated when **RDS** is deactivated.

Audio

Activating the radio

Touch ♫ .
The audio main menu last selected is displayed.
If the radio main menu is not active, touch **SOURCES** and then touch **Radio**. The station last played will be received.

Selecting a waveband

Select **OPTIONS** and repeatedly touch to toggle between the different wavebands.

Searching for stations

Automatic station search

Briefly touch ❮ or ❯ to play the previous or next receivable station.

Station lists

In the station lists, all receivable radio stations within the current reception area are available for selection.
To display the station list of the waveband currently active, touch **List**.
Select the desired station.

Update station lists

If the stations stored in the waveband-specific station list can no longer be received, the station lists must be updated.
To start an update for the currently active waveband, touch ↻ .

Storing favourite stations

Up to 24 radio stations of all wavebands can be stored as favorites in the **Presets** list.
Touch Presets to display the preset buttons.

Storing the currently active station

Touch and hold the desired button in the **Presets** list for a few seconds. The respective frequency or station name is displayed on the button.
If a station is already stored on a preset button, that station will be overwritten by the new one.
Alternatively, touch ★ Mem in the radio main menu to store the currently active station.

Storing a station from a station list

Select List and then select the desired station.
To store a station from the station list, briefly touch ★ next to the desired station. The station is stored and the number of the preset button will be displayed. To delete a station, touch ★ again.
Alternatively, touch and hold the name of the station until it is stored.
To delete the station, touch and hold the name of the station again until a corresponding message is displayed.

Retrieving stations

In the radio main menu select **Presets** and then briefly touch the preset button of the desired station.

Multimedia system

General Information

Introduction

Important information on operation and traffic safety

⚠ Warning

The Infotainment system must be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt, stop the vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.

Radio reception

Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:

- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multipath reception due to reflection
- shadowing

Navigation system

Control panel – Navigation System



Short press: switch the system on / off or mute the sound.
Long press: switch to standby mode.
Rotate: adjust the volume.

Displays the home screen.

Displays the menu for the driver assistant systems.

Displays the menu for the climate settings.

Displays the audio menu.

Displays the phone menu.
Displays the phone projection screen when phone projection is active.

Displays the navigation menu.

Personalisation

The Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be personalised.
To display the personalisation menu, open the settings application ⚙ and touch the menu for customisation.

Screen colour

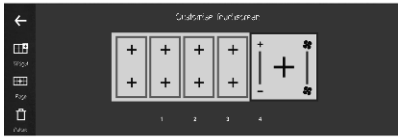
The background colour of the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be chosen. The chosen background colour will immediately be shown in both the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display.

Sound ambience

An active sport sound for the sport mode can be activated or deactivated.

Pages

Several personalised pages for the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be created.



Each page can be personalized by choosing the widgets to be displayed.

To add a page, touch ⊞.

To delete a page, drag and drop the respective page to 🗑.

Profiles

Several user profiles can be created. Due to the option of creating profiles, the Infotainment system can be fitted to several drivers. Different settings as well as saved radio stations and destinations will be connected to a specific profile. Thereby, the settings don't need to be adjusted every time another person is driving the vehicle.

To display the profile settings, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the profile menu.

Creating a profile

To create a new profile, touch +.

The following settings can be adjusted for each profile:

- profile name
- avatar
- associated device

Once a new profile is created, the profile settings can be changed at any time by touching ⚙.

Deleting a profile

To delete a profile, touch ⚙ next to the corresponding profile and select 🗑. The guest profile cannot be deleted.

The guest profile is a default profile. It is active when no other profile is created or active.

Basic operation

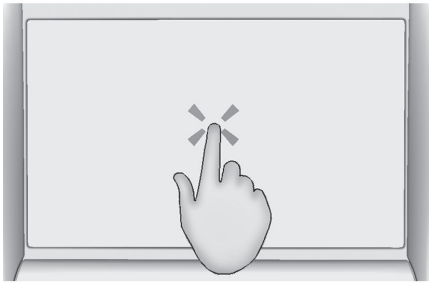
Screen operations

The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

Caution
Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

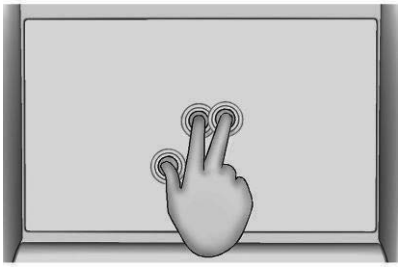
Use the following finger gestures to control the Infotainment system.

Touch



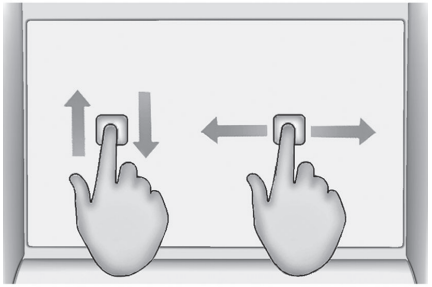
Touch is used to open a menu or select an option.

Three finger quick access



Touch is used to display the apps overview.

Swipe



Swipe is used to scroll through a menu or to pan the map.

Returning to the previous screen in a submenu

To return to the previous screen, touch ← in the upper part of the screen.

Displaying and hiding the menu

Within an app, the menu can be displayed and hidden by touching ☰.

Status bar

The status bar is the top bar on the screen. It can indicate the following:

- time
- outside temperature
- Wi-Fi connection status
- Bluetooth® activation
- mobile reception
- activated functions, e.g. A/C

Apps overview



To display a list of all available apps, touch ⊞.

Alternatively, the apps overview will be displayed by a 3-finger touch on the screen.

System settings

To display the system settings menu, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the menu for the system settings 🌐.



The following system settings can be adjusted:

- language
- date and time, time format, date format
- unit for distance and consumption
- unit for outside temperature
- restore the factory settings
- view system information

Brightness

To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination and the interior lighting, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the menu for the brightness adjustment.

The interior lighting can also be activated or deactivated.

Connectivity

To display the connectivity menu, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the menu for connectivity.
The following settings are adjustable:

- wireless devices: display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth® or phone projection) and search for nearby devices
- Wi-Fi networks: activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network
- privacy settings: activate or deactivate data and location sharing for authorized services

System updates

When an update is available and ready to install, a message will be displayed at the end of a trip after stopping the vehicle.
Alternatively, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the menu for updates to check if an update is available. If available, pending updates will be displayed on the screen.

It is possible to activate automatic downloads of updates by touching the checkbox. If activated, the updates will be automatically downloaded when the vehicle is connected to an external Wi-Fi network.

Note

The manufacturer does not charge for the use of this service.
However, the use of Wi-Fi and/or mobile phone networks by your smartphone may incur extra charges if you exceed the data allowance included in your contract. Any associated costs will be billed to you by your mobile telephone operator.
The installation of an update will continue even if the vehicle will be left and closed. When the vehicle has started again, a message will be displayed on the screen if the installation of the update has been successfully finished.
When the installation has been failed, a corresponding message will be displayed on the screen. Contact an assistance centre.

Privacy

The privacy settings can be set via the connectivity menu within the settings app ⚙. Alternatively, the privacy settings can be set via the status bar by touching ⟲↑↓.

The privacy settings can be set for each profile. The following privacy settings can be set:

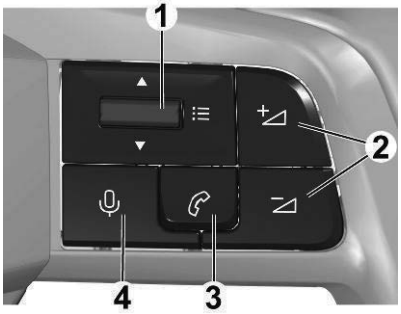
- share data and location
- share data
- private mode

To use all available connected services without restrictions, it is necessary to share data and location.
When the private mode is activated, connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

Connected services

To display the menu for connected services, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the corresponding menu entry.

Steering Wheel Controls



1 Toggle up or down: select the previous / next radio station or track or browse through the list of recent calls.
Short press: display a menu or validate a selection.

2 Short press: adjust the volume or unmute the sound.
Long press on −: mute the sound.

3 Short press: accept an incoming call, hang up, display the list of recent calls or display the phone projection screen.
Long press: refuse an incoming call.

4 Short press: activate the voice assistant of the Infotainment system.
Long press: activate the voice assistant of the connected mobile phone.

Voice Commands

The voice recognition service offers a choice of 20 languages minimum (French, German, English (UK), English (US), Arabic, Brazilian, Chinese, Danish, Spanish, Hebrew, Italian, Japanese, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Swedish, Czech, Turkish) available with the cellular network and in line with the language chosen and previously configured in the system.
The system supports two languages for cases where the area in which the vehicle is traveling is not covered by the cellular network.
These languages, referred to as on-board languages, are downloaded into the system.
If the chosen language has not been downloaded, a message on the screen appears as soon as the cellular network is not connected for the first time and offers to download it.
To use this new language in all areas, download it beforehand (ignition on without starting the engine) via the Wi-Fi network.
Apply the download procedure displayed on the screen.
Downloading this new language removes the least used on-board language.
The integrated speech recognition can be used to operate the Infotainment system via voice commands.
There are three ways to activate the speech recognition:

1. press on the steering wheel.
2. touch in the Info Display.

- say "Hey Opel"
  After pressing on the steering wheel or touching in the Info Display, wait for the beep before saying a voice command.

To display some voice command examples, open the help menu in the Info Display. The examples will be sorted by categories, e.g. radio or navigation.

Navigation

Access to additional videos

https://www.tomtom.com/stellantis-connected-nav

Press the **" Navigation "** application to display the navigation home screen.

Press **" Search "** to enter an address or a name.

Press this button to display the main menu for the various options.

Press this button to display the 3D/2D mode or to display cardinal directions (N, E, S, W).

Select **" Sound activated "**, **" Alerts only "** and **" Silent "** with successive presses on this button.

Press the "plus"/"minus" buttons to zoom in/out, or use two fingers on the screen.

Touch in the Info Display to open the navigation app.



Starting a route guidance

To start a route guidance, touch to enter an address via a keyboard.
After typing the first letters of the address, matching addresses will be displayed.
Once the address is entered, several routes might be displayed on the map. Choose one before starting the route guidance.

Active route guidance

During an active route guidance, information about the route, e.g. the estimated arrival time and the distance, will be displayed on the screen.
To activate or deactivate voice prompts of the route guidance, touch .
To change the route, add a stop, e.g. a restaurant or a petrol station, or to show instructions, touch the three points on the side bar of the screen.

Route settings

To open the settings menu, touch the three points on the side bar of the screen and then touch the settings menu .
Touch to view map downloads, to set the map color, to set the points of interest shown on the map and other map settings, to set the arrival information, to set the side bar on the route guidance screen, to set the map orientation or to show the vehicle range on the map.
Touch to set the options for rerouting, to set the preferred route types (fast, short, eco-friendly) or to avoid specific routes (toll roads, unpaved roads, etc.).
Touch to set the types of voice prompts, alerts and sounds.
Touch to set the privacy information (keep journey history, frequent destinations, etc.).

Map updates

When connected services are activated, the map of the current region will be updated automatically.
When the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the maps of all other regions can be updated via the maps and display menu Bluetooth® .

⚠ Warning

Warning Navigation is a driving aid. It cannot replace the driver. All guidance instructions should be carefully checked by the user.
By using the navigation, you accept the following terms and conditions: https://www.tomtom.com/en_gb/legal/eula-automotive/?388448

Connectivity

Phone projection

The phone projection applications Apple® CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from a smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls.
Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with the smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

Preparing the smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.
Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

Connecting the smartphone

Connect the phone to the USB port or connect the phone via Bluetooth®.
Make sure phone projection is activated in the connectivity settings.

Starting phone projection

Touch the Apple® CarPlay or Android Auto app on the Info Display.
The phone projection screen displayed depends on the smartphone and software version.

Using the voice assistant of the smartphone

Press and hold on the steering wheel and say the corresponding activation voice command of the smartphone's voice assistant to use the voice assistant of the smartphone via the Infotainment system.

Phone

The phone function provides you with the possibility of having mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle loudspeakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the Infotainment system in the vehicle. To be able to use the phone function, the mobile phone must be connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth®.
Not all phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The usable phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You can find further information on this in the operating instructions for your mobile phone, or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

Important information for operation and traffic safety

⚠ Warning

Mobile phones have effects on your environment. For this reason safety regulations and directions have been prepared. You should be familiar with the related directions before you use the telephone function.

⚠ Warning

Use of the hands-free facility while driving can be dangerous because your concentration is reduced when telephoning. Park your vehicle before you use the handsfree facility. Follow the stipulations of the country in which you find yourself at present.

Do not forget to follow the special regulations that apply in specific areas and always switch off the mobile phone if the use of mobile phones is prohibited, if interference is caused by the mobile phone or if dangerous situations can occur.

Pairing a device

During the pairing process, PIN code exchange between the Bluetooth® device and the Infotainment system and connection of the Bluetooth® devices to the Infotainment system are carried out.

Important information

- Two paired Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system at the same time. One device in hands-free mode, the other in audio streaming mode, see description on Bluetooth® profile settings below.
  However, two devices cannot be used in hands-free mode at the same time
- Pairing only needs to be carried out once, unless the device is deleted from the list of paired devices. If the device has been connected previously, the Infotainment system establishes the connection automatically.
- Bluetooth® operation considerably drains the device's battery.
  Therefore, connect the device to the USB port for charging.

Pairing a new device

1. Activate the Bluetooth® function of the Bluetooth® device. For further information, see the operating instructions for the Bluetooth® device.
2. Press ✆ and then touch Bluetooth® search.A search for all Bluetooth® devices in the near environment is performed.
3. Select the Bluetooth® device you wish to pair from the displayed list.
4. Confirm the pairing procedure:
   - If SSP (secure simple pairing) is supported: Confirm the messages on the Infotainment system and the Bluetooth® device.
   - If SSP (secure simple pairing) is not supported: On the Infotainment system: a message is displayed asking you to enter a PIN code on your Bluetooth device.
     On the Bluetooth device: enter the PIN code and confirm your input.
     The Infotainment system and the device are paired.
5. The phone book is downloaded automatically to the Infotainment system. Depending on the phone, the Infotainment system must be allowed access to the phone book. If required, confirm the messages displayed on the Bluetooth® device.
   If this function is not supported by the Bluetooth® device, a corresponding message is displayed.

Operations on paired devices

Press ✆ , select **TEL** and then select **Bluetooth® connection**.
A list of all paired devices is displayed.

Changing the Bluetooth® profile settings

Touch ⚙ next to the desired paired device.
Activate or deactivate the profile settings as desired and confirm your settings.

Connecting a paired device

Devices which are paired but not connected are identified by ✆.
Select the desired device to connect it.

Disconnecting a device

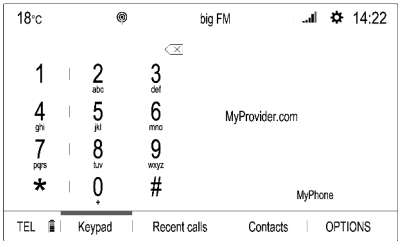
The currently connected device is identified by ✆.
Select the device to disconnect it.

Deleting a paired device

Touch in the upper right corner of the screen to display icons next to each paired device.
Touch next to the Bluetooth® device you want to delete and confirm the displayed message.

Phone main menu

Press to display the phone main menu.



Many functions of the mobile phone can now be controlled via the phone main menu (and associated submenus), and via the phonespecific controls on the steering wheel.

Initiating a phone call

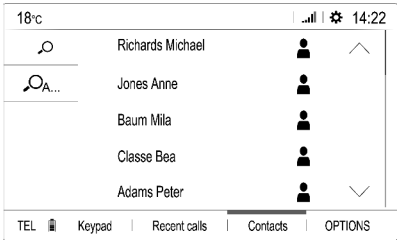
Entering a phone number

Enter a phone number using the keypad in the phone main menu.

As soon as figures are entered, matching entries from the contacts list are displayed in alphabetical order.
Touch the desired list entry to initiate a phone call.

Using the contacts list

The contacts list contains all phone book entries from the connected Bluetooth® device.
Select **Contacts** to see the contacts list.



Searching for a contact

The contacts are ordered by the first name or surname. To change the order, touch **OPTIONS** and then .
To scroll through the list, touch or .
To search for a contact via keyboard, touch .
To search for a contact via the first letter, touch and select the desired letter.

Modifying or deleting a contact

Select next to the contact and then select the desired option.

Using the call history

All incoming, outgoing, or missed calls are registered.
Select **Recent calls** to see the call history.
Select the desired list entry to initiate a call.

Incoming phone call

If an audio mode, e.g. the radio or USB mode, is active at the moment a call comes in, the audio source is muted and stays muted until the call ends.
A message with the caller's phone number or name is displayed.



To answer the call, touch .

To reject the call, touch .

To put the call on hold, touch ❚❚. To resume to the call, touch ▶.
To mute the microphone of the Infotainment system, touch **Micro OFF** and ☑ will appear. To cancel the mute function, press ☑ again.
To continue conversation via the mobile phone (private mode), touch . To reactivate the conversation via the Infotainment system, touch again.

Note
If you leave the vehicle and lock it while you are still in a private mode phone conversation, the Infotainment system may remain switched on until you leave the Bluetooth® reception area of the Infotainment system.

Put incoming calls always on hold

For safety reasons the phone function can put all incoming calls on hold by default.
To activate this function, select **OPTIONS** and then touch until the function is activated.

Mobile phones and CB radio equipment

Installation instructions and operating guidelines

The vehicle specific installation instructions and the operating guidelines of the mobile phone and hands-free manufacturer must be observed when installing and operating a mobile telephone. Failure to do so could invalidate the vehicle type approval.
Recommendations for fault-free operation:

- Professionally installed exterior antenna to obtain the maximum range possible
- Maximum transmission power 10 W
- Installation of the phone in a suitable spot, consider relevant Note in the section **Airbag system**.

Seek advice on predetermined installation points for the external antenna or equipment holder and ways of using devices with a transmission power exceeding 10 W.
Use of a hands-free attachment without external antenna with mobile telephone standards GSM 900/1800/1900 and UMTS is only permitted if the maximum transmission power of the mobile telephone is 2 W for GSM 900 or 1 W for the other types.
For reasons of safety, do not use the phone while driving. Even use of a hands-free set can be a distraction while driving.

⚠ Warning

Operation of radio equipment and mobile telephones that fail to meet above mentioned mobile telephone standards is only permitted using an antenna located outside of the vehicle.

Tip
Mobile telephones and radio equipment may lead to malfunctions in the vehicle electronics when operated inside the vehicle with no exterior antenna, unless the above mentioned regulations are observed.

Media

USB ports

Two USB ports are located on the control panel. Another USB port may be located in the rear console.

⚠ Warning

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Note
The USB ports must always be kept clean and dry.
An MP3 player, USB device, SD card (via USB connector / adapter) or smartphone can be connected to each USB port.
The Infotainment system can play audio files or show picture files contained in USB devices.
When connected to a USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus of the Infotainment system.
Note
Not all auxiliary devices are supported by the Infotainment system.
Note
To use the phone projection feature of the Infotainment system, the smartphone has to be connected to the USB port on the control panel, which may be used for data exchanging. The USB port in the rear console cannot be used for Apple® CarPlay.
Connecting / disconnecting a device
Connect one of the devices mentioned above to a USB port. If required, use the appropriate connection cable. The music function starts automatically.
Note
If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message appears and the Infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.
To disconnect a USB device, select another function and then remove the USB device.
Tip
Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.
For a detailed description on how to establish a Bluetooth® connection .
If audio playback does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the playback on the smartphone. First adjust the volume on your smartphone (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of Infotainment system.

File formats

The audio equipment supports different file formats.
The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

Activating the music function

Connecting the USB or Bluetooth® device.
If device already connected, but playback of stored music files not active:

Press ♫, select **SOURCES** and then select the respective source.
Playback of the audio tracks starts automatically.

Playback functions

Interrupting and resuming playback

Touch ❚❚ to interrupt playback. The screen button changes to ▶.

Touch ▶ to resume playback.

Playing the previous or next track

Touch 〈 or 〉 .

Fast forwarding and rewinding

Touch and hold ❮ or ❯ . Release to return to normal playback mode. Alternatively, you can move the slider showing the current track position to the left or right.

Playing tracks randomly

Select **OPTIONS** and touch the Random icon repeatedly:
ON: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in random order.
OFF: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode.

Repeating tracks

Select **OPTIONS** and touch the **Repeat** icon ON repeatedly to select one of the following options:

- repeat tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.)
- repeat tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) once
- play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode

Activating the picture viewer

Connecting the USB device.

If device already connected, but picture viewer not active: Press ⊞, select **Photos** and choose the desired folder and picture.



Touch the screen to display the menu bar.

Viewing the previous or next picture

Touch ◀◀ or ▶▶.

Starting or stopping a slide show

Select ▶ to view the pictures stored on the USB device in a slide show.

Touch ❚❚ to end the slide show.

Phone projection

The phone projection applications Apple® CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from your smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls.
Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with your smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

Preparing the smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.
Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

Connecting the smartphone iPhone

Connect the phone to the USB port.
If the phone is already connected via Bluetooth®, upon connecting to the USB port and launching Apple® CarPlay, the Bluetooth® connection will disconnect. After disconnecting the USB connection, the phone will be connected via Bluetooth® again.

Android phone

Connect the phone via Bluetooth® and then connect the phone to the USB port.

Starting phone projection

If phone projection is not starting automatically, press ✆ and then touch **Apple® CarPlay** or **Android Auto**.

The phone projection screen displayed depends on your smartphone and software version.

Returning to the Infotainment screen

Press, e.g., the ♫ button on the control panel.

Multimedia Pro

Introduction

Important information on operation and traffic safety

⚠ Warning

The Infotainment system must be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt, stop the vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.

Radio reception

Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:

- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multipath reception due to reflection
- shadowing

Multimedia Pro

Control panel – Multimedia Pro



Short press: switch the system on / off or mute the sound.
Long press: switch to standby mode.
Rotate: adjust the volume.

Displays the home screen.

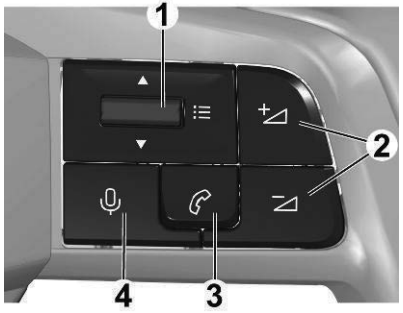
Displays the menu for the driver assistant systems.

Displays the menu for the climate settings.

Displays the audio menu.

Displays the phone menu.
Displays the phone projection screen when phone projection is active.

Steering wheel controls



1 Toggle up or down: select the previous / next radio station or track or browse through the list of recent calls.
Short press: display a menu or validate a selection.

2 Short press: adjust the volume or unmute the sound.
Long press on ◿: mute the sound.

3 Short press: accept an incoming call, hang up, display the list of recent calls or display the phone projection screen.
Long press: refuse an incoming call.

4 Short press: activate the voice assistant of the Infotainment system.
Long press: activate the voice assistant of the connected mobile phone.

Personalisation

The Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be personalised.
To display the personalisation menu, open the settings application ⚙ and touch the menu for customisation.

Screen color

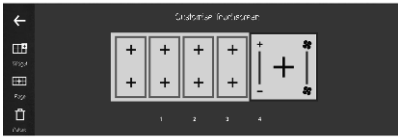
The background color of the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be chosen. The chosen background color will immediately be shown in both the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display.

Sound ambience

An active sport sound for the sport mode can be activated or deactivated.

Pages

Several personalised pages for the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be created.



Each page can be personalised by choosing the widgets to be displayed.

To add a page, touch ⊞.
To delete a page, drag and drop the respective page to 🗑.

Widgets

A widget is the indication of specific information or gauge, e.g. radio information, navigation information or the engine coolant temperature gauge.



The Driver Information Centre can display one widget per page, the Info Display can contain several widgets.

To add a widget to a page, touch ⊞.

Some widgets are available in different sizes. The bigger a widget is, the less widgets can be displayed on a page.

Profiles

Several user profiles can be created. Due to the option of creating profiles, the Infotainment system can be fitted to several drivers. Different settings as well as saved radio stations and destinations will be connected to a specific profile. Thereby, the settings don't need to be adjusted every time another person is driving the vehicle.
To display the profile settings, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the profile menu.

Creating a profile

To create a new profile, touch +.
The following settings can be adjusted for each profile:

- profile name
- avatar
- associated device

Once a new profile is created, the profile settings can be changed at any time by touching ⚙ .

Deleting a profile

To delete a profile, touch ⚙ next to the corresponding profile and select 🗑. The guest profile cannot be deleted.
The guest profile is a default profile. It is active when no other profile is created or active.

Basic Operation

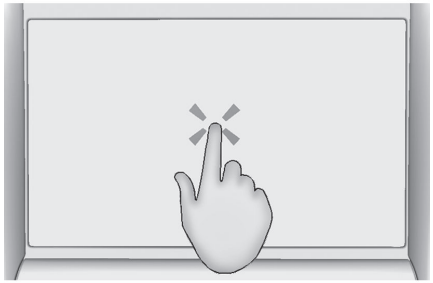
Screen operations

The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

Caution
Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

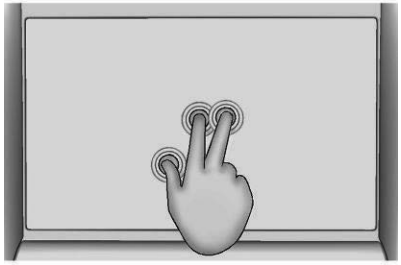
Use the following finger gestures to control the Infotainment system.

Touch



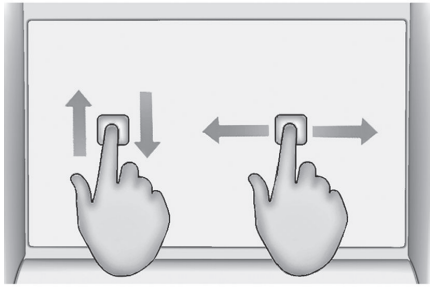
Touch is used to open a menu or select an option.

Three finger quick access



Touch is used to display the apps overview.

Swipe



Swipe is used to scroll through a menu or to pan the map.

Returning to the previous screen in a submenu

To return to the previous screen, touch ← in the upper part of the screen.
Displaying and hiding the menu Within an app, the menu can be displayed and hidden by touching ☰.

Status bar

The status bar is the top bar on the screen. It can indicate the following:

- time
- outside temperature
- Wi-Fi connection status

- Bluetooth® activation
- mobile reception
- activated functions, e.g. A/C

Apps overview



To display a list of all available apps, touch ⊞ .
Alternatively, the apps overview will be displayed by a 3-finger touch on the screen.

System settings

To display the system settings menu, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the menu for the system settings 🌐 .



The following system settings can be adjusted:

- language
- date and time, time format, date format
- unit for distance and consumption
- unit for outside temperature
- restore the factory settings
- view system information

Brightness

To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination and the interior lighting, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the menu for the brightness adjustment.
The interior lighting can also be activated or deactivated.

Connectivity

To display the connectivity menu, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the menu for connectivity.
The following settings are adjustable:

- wireless devices: display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth® or phone projection) and search for nearby devices
- Wi-Fi networks: activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network
- privacy settings: activate or deactivate data and location sharing for authorized services

System updates

When an update is available and ready to install, a message will be displayed at the end of a trip after stopping the vehicle.
Alternatively, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the menu for updates to check if an update is available. If available, pending updates will be displayed on the screen.
It is possible to activate automatic downloads of updates by touching the checkbox. If activated, the updates will be automatically downloaded when the vehicle is connected to an external Wi-Fi network.
The installation of an update will continue even if the vehicle will be left and closed. When the vehicle has started again, a message will be displayed on the screen if the installation of the update has been successfully finished.
When the installation has been failed, a corresponding message will be displayed on the screen. Contact an assistance centre.

Privacy

The privacy settings can be set via the connectivity menu within the settings app

⚙. Alternatively, the privacy settings can be set via the status bar by touching ⚙. The privacy settings can be set for each profile. The following privacy settings can be set:

- share data and location
- share data
- private mode To use all available connected services without restrictions, it is necessary to share data and location.

When the private mode is activated, connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

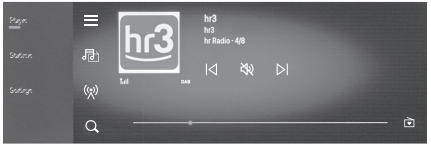
Connected services

To display the menu for connected services, open the settings app ⚙ and touch the corresponding menu entry.

Audio

Display the audio screen by touching ♫ in the apps overview.

Touch 📻 to switch between the radio and a connected external device as the audio source.



Switching the radio stations

Touch ⏭ briefly to perform an automatic search for the next radio station.

Touch and hold ⏭ to perform a quick search for the next radio stations.

Touch ⏮ briefly to perform an automatic search for the previous radio station.

Touch and hold ⏮ to perform a quick search for the previous radio stations.

Station list

All available radio stations will be displayed as a list by touching the list entry in the radio menu on the left side of the screen.

Waveband

To select the waveband, touch 📡.

Frequency tuning

To tune into a specific radio frequency, touch 🔍.

A number pad will be displayed. Enter the desired frequency and touch ✓ to confirm.

Saving radio stations

To save the current radio station, touch ☆ to get to the station line up and then touch + in the lower part of the screen. Buttons which are already used for radio stations can be overwritten.
Unused buttons for saving radio stations will be indicated by +.
Alternatively, radio stations can be saved by touching the corresponding heart icon in the station list.
Saved radio stations will be displayed or hidden by touching ☆ . The saved radio stations will be lined up in the lower part of the screen. Touch the desired radio station to tune in.

Mute

To mute or unmute, touch 🔊 on the screen.
Alternatively, press 🔇 on the steering wheel to mute and + 🔉 or - 🔉 to unmute.

Audio settings

In the settings menu within the radio app, the following settings can be adjusted:

- sound settings: ambience sound, equaliser, balance
- radio settings: station list order, activation or deactivation of station follow-up and traffic and news announcements
- volume settings: system voice, ringtone, phone call, system sounds, navigation warnings

External Devices

Phone projection

The phone projection applications Apple® CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from a smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls.
Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with the smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

Preparing the smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.

Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

Connecting the smartphone

Connect the phone to the USB port or connect the phone via Bluetooth®.
Make sure phone projection is activated in the connectivity settings.

Starting phone projection

Touch the Apple® CarPlay or Android Auto app on the Info Display.
The phone projection screen displayed depends on the smartphone and software version.

Using the voice assistant of the smartphone

Press and hold on the steering wheel and say the corresponding activation voice command of the smartphone's voice assistant to use the voice assistant of the smartphone via the Infotainment system.

Speech Recognition

The integrated speech recognition can be used to operate the Infotainment system via voice commands.

There are three ways to activate the speech recognition:

- press on the steering wheel
- touch in the Info Display
- say "Hey Opel" After pressing on the steering wheel or touching in the Info Display, wait for the beep before saying a voice command.

To display some voice command examples, open the help menu in the Info Display. The examples will be sorted by categories, e.g. radio or navigation.

Phone

Bluetooth® connection

Touch in the Info Display to open the phone app.
Once a mobile phone is connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth®, the following functions are available via the phone app:

- display the contact list
- display a list of the recent calls
- dial a telephone number via a keyboard

Pairing a mobile phone

To pair a mobile phone, open the settings menu in the phone app in the Info Display.
Open the Bluetooth® menu on the mobile phone and activate the function.
Select the mobile phone from the list on the Info Display. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone.
Once the mobile phone is successfully paired, it will be connected automatically and shown as connected.
Also a second mobile phone can be connected via the settings menu in the phone app.

Making a call

To make a call, choose one of the contacts from the contact list, dial a telephone number via the keyboard or select a number from the recent calls list.

Receiving a call

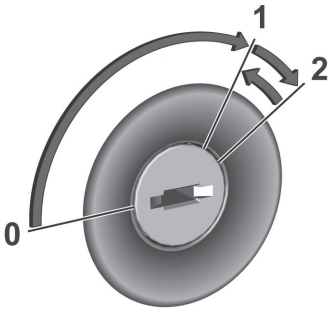
An incoming call is announced by a ring and a message on the Info Display.
To accept an incoming call or hang up an active call, touch the corresponding button on the Info Display or press ✆ on the steering wheel.
To refuse an incoming call, touch the corresponding button on the Info Display or press and hold ✆ on the steering wheel.

Starting & Operating

Starting procedure..... 133
Starting and stopping the engine ...133
Stop & Start (ICE) 137
Brakes 139
Parking brake 140
Brake assist 141
Active emergency braking 142
Regenerative braking 142
Automatic Gearbox 143
Manual transmission 145
Drive Selector (Electric) 146
Drive modes 148
Driving Mode Selector 148
Normal mode.....148
Eco..... 148
Power mode..... 148
Engine exhaust 148
Exhaust filter 148
Catalytic converter 149
Fuel 149
Fuels Compatibility 149
Charging 149
Charging system (Electric) 149
General information.....152
Charging types 152
Charging cable 153
Programmable charging..... 160
Charging status 161
Vehicle to Load (V2L) 162
Vehicle loading 162
Roof Bars..... 162
Overload indicator..... 164
Trailer towing 164
General information..... 164
Towing Recommendation.....165
Recreational Towing 165
Towing the vehicle 165
Towing another vehicle 167
Driving Tips 168
Driving On Slippery Surfaces..... 168

Starting procedure

Starting And Stopping The Engine



0 ignition off: some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously

1 ignition on power mode: ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating, control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable

2 engine start: release key after engine has been started

1. Turn key to **position 1** to release the steering wheel lock.

2. **Manual transmission**: operate clutch and brake pedal.
3. **Automatic transmission**: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
   Do not operate accelerator pedal.
   Diesel engines: wait until control indicator
   ⟃ extinguishes.
4. Turn key briefly to **position 2** and release after engine has been started.
   Manual transmission: during an Autostop (Stop & Start), the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.
   Automatic transmission: during an Autostop (Stop & Start), the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal.

Autostop = engine standby with the Stop & Start system.
For more explanatins of Stop & Start refers to the "Stop & Start Automatic Function" section.

Steering wheel lock

Remove key from ignition switch and turn steering wheel until it engages.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then turn the key to position x without pressing

the accelerator pedal, to operate the starter motor until the engine starts.
As soon as the engine starts, release the key so it returns to position **2**:
– In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
– In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23 °C), to ensure correct operation and durability of your vehicle's mechanical components (engine and gearbox), leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

Note
Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

Engine start

Operate the clutch pedal (manual transmission), the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.
The parking brake must be applied.
► With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal and keep the pedal down until the engine starts.
► With an automatic gearbox, place the selector in position P then depress the brake pedal.

Ignition on power mode without starting the engine

Press Start/Stop without operating clutch or brake pedal. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine and ignition off

Press **Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously.

Emergency shut off during driving

Press **Start/Stop** for about three seconds . Steering wheel locks as soon as vehicle is stationary.

Steering wheel lock

The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been switched off.

To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch the

ignition on power mode or start the engine directly.

⚠ Warning
If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

Operation on vehicles with electronic key system in case of failure

If either the electronic key fails or the battery of the electronic key is weak, a message may be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.



Hold the electronic key with buttons outside at the marking on the steering column cover as shown in the illustration.

On vehicles with manual transmission, select neutral gear, operate the clutch pedal, the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop.**

On vehicles with automatic transmission, move the selector to position **P**, operate the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the electronic key battery as soon as possible.

For unlocking or locking the doors, see fault in radio remote control unit or electronic key system.

Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery.

At temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a warming phase of approx. five minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

Heating functionalities

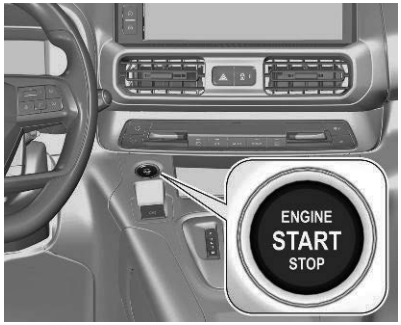
Note

Individual heating functionalities, such as heated seats or heated steering wheel, may be temporarily unavailable in the event of electrical loading constraints. Functions will be resumed after some minutes.

Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Vehicles with power button



1. Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.
2. Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
   Do not operate accelerator pedal.
3. Press **Start/Stop** button.
4. Release button after starting procedure begins. Diesel engine

starts after control indicator ⟒ for preheating extinguishes.

5. Before restarting or to switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, press Start/Stop once more briefly.

To start the engine during an Autostop:

- Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.
- Automatic transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal.

Engine start

Operate the clutch pedal (manual transmission), the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.
The parking brake must be applied.

- With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal and keep the pedal down until the engine starts.
- With an automatic gearbox, place the selector in position **P** then depress the brake pedal.

Ignition on power mode without starting the engine

Press Start/Stop without operating clutch or brake pedal. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine and ignition off

Press **Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously.

Emergency shut off during driving

Press **Start/Stop** for about three seconds . Steering wheel locks as soon as vehicle is stationary.
The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been switched off.

To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch the ignition on power mode or start the engine directly.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

Operation on vehicles with electronic key system in case of failure

If either the electronic key fails or the battery of the electronic key is weak, a message may be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.



Hold the electronic key with buttons outside at the marking on the steering column cover as shown in the illustration. On vehicles with manual transmission, select neutral gear, operate the clutch pedal, the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop.**
On vehicles with automatic transmission, move the selector to position **P**, operate the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.
This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the electronic key battery as soon as possible.

For unlocking or locking the doors, see fault in radio remote control unit or electronic key system.

Emergency shut off during driving

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press **Start/Stop** for five seconds.

⚠ Warning

Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled.
Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.

Stop & Start (ICE)

The Stop & Start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam.

Activation

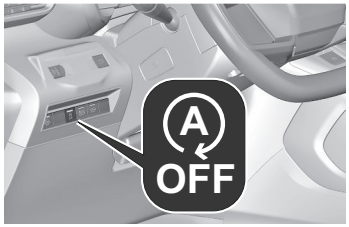
By default, the system is activated when the ignition is switched on.

Depending on version activate the system manually:

1. Press Ⓐ OFF. The system is ready to operate when the LED in the button Ⓐ OFF is not illuminated. If the Stop & Start system is temporarily not available and the button Ⓐ OFF is pressed, the LED in the button flashes.
2. Press 🚗 and activate the system in the Info Display.

The activation of the system is confirmed by a message.
Autostop = engine standby

Deactivation



Depending on version deactivate the system manually:

1. Press Ⓐ OFF. The deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.
2. Press 🚗 and deactivate the system in the Info Display.

The deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of Ⓐ OFF in the Driver Information Centre and the display of a message.

Vehicles with manual transmission

An Autostop can be activated at a standstill or at a speed below 20 km/h. Activate an Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the selector lever to neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically.
The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

The Stop & Start system will be disabled on inclines of 12% or more.

Indication



An Autostop is indicated by control indicator .
During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

Conditions for an Autostop

The Stop & Start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.

- The Stop & Start system is not manually deactivated.
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The sliding doors are closed
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is not too low.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the exhaust filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

 Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

Note

The Autostop may be inhibited for several hours after a battery replacement or reconnection.
Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop.
Immediately after higher speed driving an Autostop may be inhibited.

Vehicle battery discharge protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the Stop & Start system.

Power saving measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

Restart of the engine by the driver

Vehicles with manual transmission

Depress the clutch pedal without depressing the brake pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is restarted in the following cases:

- brake pedal released while **D** or **M** is selected
- brake pedal released and **N** selected when selector is moved to select **D** or **M**
- brake pedal depressed and **P** selected when selector is moved to select **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**
- **R** selected

Restart of the engine by the Stop & Start system

Vehicles with manual transmission: The selector must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.
If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop , the engine will be restarted automatically by the Stop & Start system:

- The **Stop & Start** system is manually deactivated.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- The sliding doors are opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

⚠ Warning

Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



⚠ Warning

Driving on flooded roads

Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system. For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunctions
Depending on the vehicle’s equipment:



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments on the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.



In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel.



The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.
If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing the journey.
When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice.
Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is

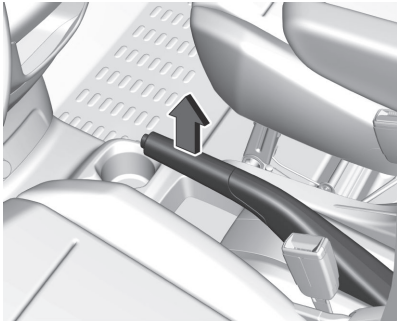
especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

Parking Brake

⚠ Warning

Before leaving the vehicle, check parking brake status. Control indicator illuminates constantly when electric parking brake is applied.

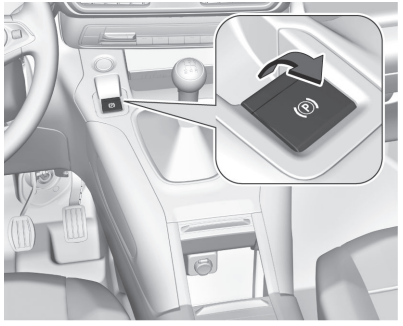
Manual parking brake



⚠ Warning

Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope. To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever. To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Electric parking brake



Applying when vehicle is stationary

⚠ Warning

Pull switch Ⓟ for a minimum of one second until control indicator Ⓟ illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied. The electric parking brake operates automatically with adequate force. Before leaving the vehicle, check the electric parking brake status.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off.
Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without engine running, as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

Releasing

- Switch on ignition. Keep foot brake pedal depressed and then push switch the indicator light.

Drive away function

- Depressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated.

It is not possible when switch the indicator light is pulled at the same time.

Braking when vehicle is moving

When the vehicle is moving and the switch the indicator light is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle. As soon as the switch the indicator lightis released, braking will be stopped.
The antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control stabilize the vehicle while the switch the indicator light is kept pulled. If an error of

the electric parking brake occurs, a warning message is displayed in the driver information centre. If the antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control fail, one or both indicators Ⓟ and illuminate in the instrument cluster. In this case, stability can only be provided by repeatedly pulling and pushing the switch Ⓟ until the vehicle is immobilised.

Automatic operation

Automatic operation includes automatic application and automatic release of the electric parking brake.
The electric parking brake can also be applied or released manually by using the switch the indicator light.
Automatic application:

- The electric parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched off.
- The indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the application.

Automatic release:

- Parking brake releases automatically after moving off.
- The indicator light extinguishes in the instrument cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the release.

If the vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission and the brake is not released automatically, make sure the front doors are correctly closed.

Deactivation of automatic operation

In certain situations, e.g. in very cold weather conditions, when being towed etc., it may be necessary that the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is deactivated.

1. Start the engine.
2. If the parking brake is released, apply the parking brake pulling the switchⓅ.
3. Take your foot off the brake pedal.
4. Press the switch Ⓟ for at least 10 seconds and maximum 15 seconds.
5. Depress and hold the brake pedal. Release the switch Ⓟ.
6. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
7. Pull the switch Ⓟ for two seconds.

The deactivation of the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is confirmed by AUTO Ⓟ OFF illuminating in the instrument cluster. The electric parking brake can only be applied and released manually.
To reactivate the automatic operation, repeat the steps described above.

Functionality check

When the vehicle is not moving, the electric parking brake might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.
Fault Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by a control indicator and by a vehicle message which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Control indicator Ⓟ flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and try applying it again.

Brake Assist

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.
Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

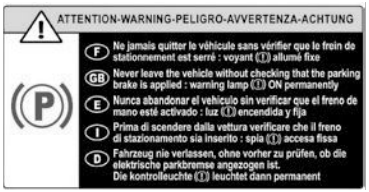
⚠ Warning

When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing

With a manual gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and engage a gear.
With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.
When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox.

⚠ Warning

In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate. As a safety measure, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chock against one of the wheels.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



Active Emergency Braking

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles and pedestrians directly ahead, when the driver does not actively take action either by manual braking or by steering. For vehicles equipped with camera and radar, active emergency braking also detects cyclists. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver may be warned by the forward collision alert.
The feature uses various inputs (e.g.camera sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

⚠ Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. It warns the driver if the vehicle is at risk of a collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist. Just before the imminent collision, it reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.
The system may also react on animals. However, animals smaller than 0.5 m or objects on the road may not be detected.
After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.
The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

Regenerative Braking

⚠ Warning

In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high-voltage battery is almost fully charged, the brake force of the engine braking may be temporarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficient, the driver must be prepared to use the brake pedal.

⚠ Warning

Depending on the engine braking force the brake lights are illuminated.

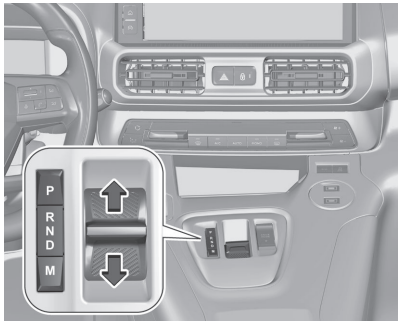
Regenerative braking generates electrical energy resulting from engine

braking to charge the high voltage battery.

Automatic Gearbox

The automatic transmission permits automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) or manual gear shifting (manual mode).

Gear selector



Move the selector or press the respective buttons.
P : park mode
R : reverse mode
N : neutral mode
D : automatic mode
M : manual mode
After moving the selector it returns to the centre position. The engaged mode is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.
Moving the selector beyond the resistance point skips neutral mode **N**.
Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.
When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

1. To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary.
   In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.
2. To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

P is automatically engaged when:

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 2 km/h (1.5 mph) : risk of sudden braking!
- **N** has been selected for some time

If the vehicle is moving too fast **P** is not engaged.

Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage R, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal must be depressed.

Caution

Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

Note
In slippery conditions, operate the vehicle in D for enhanced riding and handling performance.
This mode is for normal driving.

⚠ Warning

With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

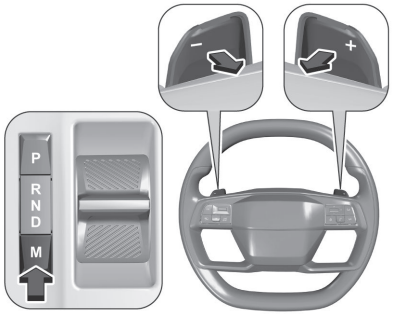
⚠ Warning

Automatic gearbox

Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Manual mode M

In this mode, it is possible to change gears manually using steering wheel paddles.
Manual mode **M** can only be selected if **D** is engaged.
The selected gear is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.
If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message to appear in the Driver Information Centre.
In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.



1. Press button **M**.
2. Pull steering wheel paddles to select gears manually.
3. Pull right paddle + to shift to a higher gear.
4. Pull left paddle - to shift to a lower gear. Multiple pulls allow gears to be skipped.
5. Press **M** again to return into **D**.

Eco mode



This mode adjusts the settings of the systems for a more economic fuel consumption, e.g. by optimising the automatic transmission shift points and adapting the sensitivity of the accelerator pedal.

Free wheeling / car wash mode

In certain situations, e.g., in an automatic car wash etc., it is necessary that the wheels can move freely when the engine is switched off.
To enable free wheeling, the vehicle has to be stationary, the engine has to be running and the driver's door has to be closed.

1. Depress the brake pedal and select **N**.

2. Within five seconds, depress and hold the brake pedal, switch off ignition and move the selector forwards or backwards.
3. Release the brake pedal and switch on ignition.
4. Depress and hold the brake pedal and push the switch Ⓟ.
5. Release the brake pedal and switch off ignition.

A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre indicating that the wheels are unblocked for the next 15 minutes.
To revert to normal operation, depress and hold the brake pedal, switch on the engine and press **P**.

Deactivation of automatic operation of the electric parking brake

For this procedure, refer to the description of the automatic parking brake.

Gear shift indication

The symbol ▼ or ▲with a number beside it is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons. Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Engine braking

Engine braking is only possible in manual mode.
To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill.

Electronic driving programmes

Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.
Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to select manually first, second or third gear for starting off.

Kickdown

Pressing down the accelerator pedal beyond the kickdown detent will lead to maximum acceleration when driving in **D** or **M**. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

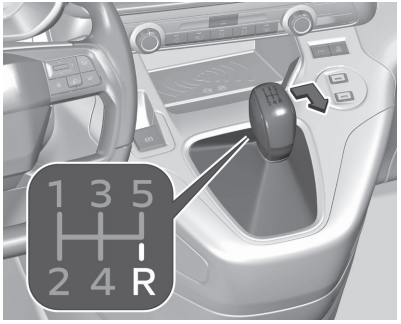
Fault

In the event of a fault, illuminates and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Electronic transmission control enables only third gear. The transmission no longer shifts automatically.
Do not drive faster than 100 km/h.
Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Interruption of power supply

In the event of an interruption of power supply, it is not possible to select another mode when P is engaged.
If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads.
If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Manual transmission



To engage reverse on 5-speed transmission, with the vehicle stationary

and engine at idle depress the clutch pedal and move the selector lever to the right and rear.
To engage reverse on 6-speed transmission, with the vehicle stationary and engine at idle depress the clutch pedal, pull the ring under the selector lever and move the selector lever quite to the left and front.
If the gear does not engage, set the selector lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again. Then repeat gear selection.
Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily. When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.
When clutch slip is detected for a specific time, the engine power will be reduced. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Release the clutch.

Tip

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Drive Selector (Electric)

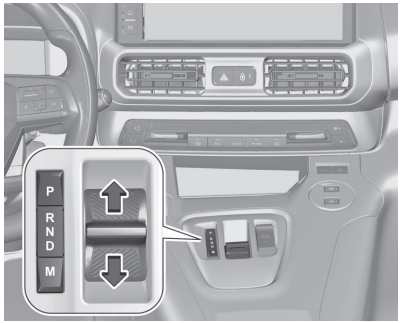
The vehicle uses an electric drive unit with a 1-gear transmission.

Caution

If the vehicle seems to accelerate slowly or not respond when you try to go faster, do not continue your journey. The electric drive unit could be damaged. Consult a workshop as soon as possible.

Tip

Spinning the tyres or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the electric drive unit. If you are stuck, do not spin the tyres. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.



Move the selector or press the respective buttons.
P : park mode
R : reverse mode
N : neutral mode
D : automatic mode
After moving the selector it returns to the centre position. The engaged mode is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.
Moving the selector beyond the resistance point skips neutral mode **N**.
Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.
When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

1. To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary.
   In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.
2. To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

P is automatically engaged when:

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 2 km/h (1.5 mph)
- **N** has been selected for some time

Reverse mode R

1. To engage or disengage **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Caution
Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forwards could damage the electric drive unit. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

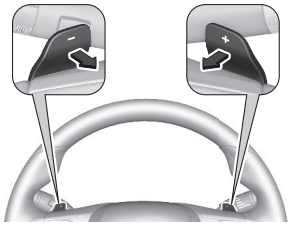
This mode is for normal driving.

Regenerative braking mode with one-pedal driving

In this mode, vehicle speed is significantly reduced by releasing the accelerator pedal, without operating the brake pedal.



Three braking levels are selectable. The respective braking level is indicated by one to three triangle segments in the Driver Information Centre.



Pull left paddle - to increase the braking force and pull right paddle + to decrease. Use the maximum braking force when driving down steep hills, in deep snow, in mud or in stop-and-go traffic.

⚠ Warning
In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high-voltage battery is almost fully charged, the brake force of the engine braking may be temporarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficientm the driver has to be prepared to use the brake pedal.

Free wheeling / car wash mode

In certain situations such as in an automatic car wash etc., it is necessary that the wheels can move freely when the engine is switched off.

To enable free wheeling, the vehicle has to be stationary, the engine has to be running and the driver's door has to be closed. Proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal and select **N**.
2. Within five seconds, depress and hold the brake pedal, press and hold the power button, in order to switch off ignition and move the selector forwards or backwards.
3. Release the brake pedal and switch on ignition.
4. Depress and hold the brake pedal and push the switch Ⓟ.
5. Release the brake pedal and switch off ignition.

A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre indicating that the wheels are unblocked for the next 15 minutes.
To revert to normal operation, depress and hold the brake pedal, switch on the engine and select P.
To revert to normal operation on vehicles equipped with an electronic key, switch the ignition on and then switch the ignition off again, without depressing the brake pedal.

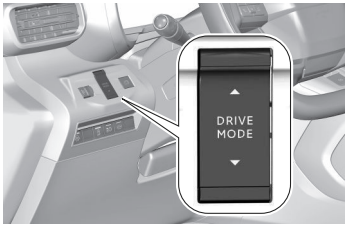
Drive modes

Driving Mode Selector

The following drive modes are selectable:

- **Normal mode**
- **Power mode**
- **Eco mode**

Each drive mode corresponds to a different vehicle setting.



Normal Mode

ICE

The settings in this mode are set by default. Every time the ignition is switched on, this mode is selected.

BEV

The settings in this mode are set by default. Every time the ignition is switched on, this mode is selected.

Eco

ICE

This mode reduces the fuel consumption by optimizing the operation of the heating and air conditioning.
While coasting the vehicle, the engine is idling with reduced engine brake.

BEV

To optimise range, electric engine power output and heating are reduced.
Selective ride control.

Power Mode

ICE

Provides the same performance as **Normal mode**, however, when the vehicle is fully loaded.

BEV

Provides the same performance as **Normal mode**, however, when the vehicle is fully loaded.

Engine exhaust

⚠ Danger
Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

- If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows.
- Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.
- Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Exhaust Filter

Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.
The start of saturation of the exhaust filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of or , accompanied by a message in the Driver Information Centre.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h (36 mph) until the control indicator extinguishes.

Note

On a new vehicle, the first exhaust filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a burning smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at

idle, water vapour can be emitted at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behavior of the vehicle or the environment.

Cleaning process not possible

If or stays on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates that the exhaust filter additive level is too low.
The reservoir must be topped-up without delay. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

Tip

Fuel grades other than those listed in the "Fuel" chapter could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.
Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter.
Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.
In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Fuel

Fuels Compatibility

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

B7 B10 B20 B30

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

⚠ Warning

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

Tip

The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (Petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Charging

Charging System (Electric)

400 V electrical system

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles**.

The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



⚠ Warning

An electric vehicle's power train can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

⚠ Warning

High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.
Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, manufacturer recommends that you:

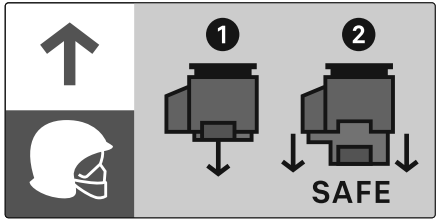
- Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.
- Never work on the purple high voltage cables or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
- Never damage, modify or remove the purple high voltage cables or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
- Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
- Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.

Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later.
Manufacturer recommends that you:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.

⚠ Warning

- Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.



⚠ Warning

This label is intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.
No other person must touch the device shown on this label.

⚠ Warning

In the event of an accident or impact to the vehicle's underbody

In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ Warning

When washing

Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.
Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

⚠ Warning

High-pressure washing

To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body. Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

⚠ Warning

Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect/disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

Traction battery

This battery stores the energy that powers the electric motor and the thermal comfort equipment in the passenger compartment. It is discharged during use, and must therefore be regularly recharged. There is no need to wait for the traction battery to fall to its reserve level before recharging.
The range of the battery may vary according to the type of driving, the route, the use of thermal comfort equipment and the ageing of its components.

Tip

The lifespan of the traction battery depends on multiple factors, such as climatic conditions, distance travelled and how often it has been fast-charged.

⚠ Warning

To preserve the mileage of your vehicle and the durability of your traction battery, the Manufacturer recommends that you:

- Do not fully charge the battery of your electric vehicle daily (charge the traction battery below 80% as often as possible).
- Do not completely discharge the battery.
- Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than 12 hours) when the traction battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.
- Avoid charging the vehicle at negative temperatures (except if the vehicle ran for more than 20 minutes) or above +30°C.
- Do not use the vehicle's traction battery as a generator of energy.
- Do not use a generator to recharge your vehicle's traction battery.

⚠ Warning

In the event of damage to the traction battery

It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.
Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.

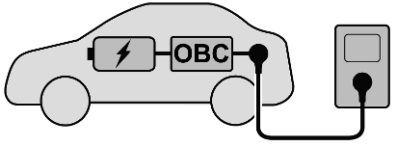
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

General Information

⚠ Warning


Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions.
If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit.

Charging the vehicle's high voltage battery depends upon several factors:



- high voltage battery of the vehicle
- internal onboard charger (OBC)
- charging cable
- external charging device

The charging cable connects the vehicle with an external charging device providing electric power. This may be a domestic electrical outlet, a Green'Up socket, a wall box or a public charging station.
The high voltage battery is charged with direct current (DC) only. When charging the vehicle with alternating current (AC), AC must be converted into DC. This is done by the vehicle's onboard charger. The onboard charger is available with 7.4 kW (single-phase) and 11 kW (3-phase).
If the vehicle is charged at a public DC charging station, no DC conversion is required. The high voltage battery can be directly charged with DC provided by the DC charging station.
The speed of charging the vehicle's high-voltage battery depends upon the weakest element of the charging chain. To achieve the maximum charging speed, charging cable and charging device must be attuned to each other.

Note

Make sure that the charging cable used fits to the vehicle's onboard charger.

Electric power consumption and range

Passenger car: the electric power consumption (combined) is within a range of 17.5 to 19.4 kWh/100 km.
Commercial car: the electric power consumption (combined) is within a range of 18.0 to 19.2 kWh/100 km.
The range is up to 320 km (200 mi) for passenger car and 278 km (175 mi) for commercial car.
For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
The determination of electric power consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No. 715/2007 and No. 2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).

Charging Types

There are different types of charging the vehicle's high-voltage battery.

Charging at wallboxes



A wallbox is a charging unit for private households. It provides a charging cable that must be connected to the vehicle's charging port. Some wallboxes do not

provide a charging cable. In this case, a separate charging cable is required which must be connected to both the wallbox and the charging port of the vehicle.
Charging time may take approx. five hours with a charging power of 11 kW or 7.5 hours with a charging power of 7.4 kW.

Charging at charging stations

Charging stations may provide alternating current (AC) or direct current (DC). Charging time may vary depending on the charging station, DC charging stations provide the fastest charging. To charge the vehicle's battery, the charging cable of the charging station must be connected to the charging port of the vehicle.



- AC charging station: Charging time may take approx. five hours with a charging power of 11 kW or 7.5 hours with a charging power of 7.4 kW.



- DC charging station: Up to approx. 80% of battery capacity may be charged in approx. 30 minutes at a charging power of 100 kW.

Charging at domestic electrical outlets



The vehicle's high voltage battery can be charged at a domestic electrical outlet. Connect the charging cable to the vehicle's charging port and to the domestic electrical outlet.
Charging time may take approx. 30 hours with a charging power of 1.8 kW.

Charging Cable

Depending on the charging type, different charging cables are used.

⚠ Warning
Improper use of portable charging cables may cause a fire, electrical shock or burns, and may result in damage to property, serious injury or death.

- Do not use extension cables, multi-outlet power strips, splitters, earthing adaptors, surge protectors or similar devices.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is worn or damaged, or one that will not hold the plug firmly in place.
- Do not immerse the charging cable into any liquid.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is not properly earthed.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is on a circuit with other electrical loads.

⚠ Warning

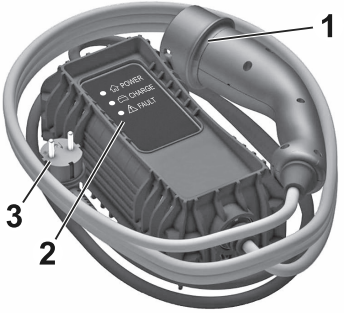
Read all the safety warnings and instructions before using this product. Failure to follow the warnings and the instructions may result in electric shock, fire and / or serious injury.
Never leave children unattended near the vehicle while the vehicle is charging and never allow children to play with the charging cable.
If the plug provided does not fit the electrical outlet, do not modify the plug. Arrange for a qualified electrician to inspect the electrical outlet.

Do not put fingers into the electric vehicle connector.

⚠ Danger

There is a risk of electric shock that may cause personal injury or death.
Do not use the charging cable if any part of the charging cable is damaged.
Do not open or remove the charging cable cover.
Service by qualified personnel only.
Connect the charging cable to a properly earthed outlet with cables that are not damaged.

Basic domestic cable (mode 2) / enhanced domestic cable (mode 2)



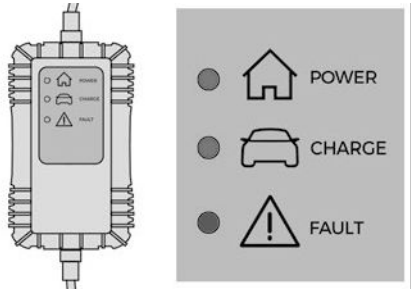
1 Vehicle plug

2 Status indicators

3 Wall plug

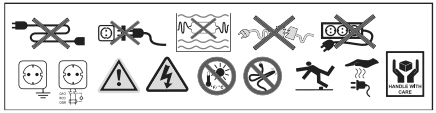
Basic domestic cables (mode 2) are used for charging at domestic electrical outlets. A basic domestic cable (mode 2) consists of a vehicle plug, a control box and a plug for the domestic electrical outlet. The control box has an integrated charge controller and several LEDs indicating the charging status.
Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are similar to basic domestic cables (mode 2). However, the charging performance of enhanced domestic cables (mode 2 charging) is better than the charging performance of basic domestic cables (mode 2).
Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are used for Green'Up sockets, which must be installed by a certified electrician at the customer's site.

Charging cable status indicators



Control unit label - Recommendations

Refer to the handbook before use.



1. Incorrect use of this charging cable may result in fire, property damage and serious injury or death by electrocution!
2. Always use a correctly earthed power socket, protected by a 30 mA residual current device.
3. Always use an electrical socket protected by a circuit-breaker appropriate for the electrical circuit's current rating.
4. The weight of the control unit must not be borne by the electrical socket, plug and cables.
5. Never use this charging cable if it is defective or in any way damaged.
6. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
7. Never immerse this charging cable in water.
8. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adaptor or on a damaged electrical socket.
9. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
10. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
11. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
12. Only use this charging cable with DS vehicles.
13. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.
14. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.

Control unit label - State of indicator lamps

	State of the indicator lamp
Off	○
On	● ●
Flashing	✳ ✳

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
○	○	○		Not connected to the power supply or power is not available from the infrastructure.
● (green)	● (green)	● (red)		The control unit is currently performing a self-test.
● (green)	○	○		Connected only to the infrastructure or to the infrastructure and to the Electric Vehicle (EV) but no charging in progress.
● (green)	☼ (green)	○		Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is on charge or in a temperature preconditioning sequence.
● (green)	● (green)	○		Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is waiting for charging or the charging of the EV is completed.
○	○	● (red)		Control unit malfunction. No charging allowed. If an error indicator reappears after a manual reset, the control unit must be checked by a dealer before the next charge.
☼ (green)	☼ (green)	☼ (red)		The control unit is in diagnostic mode.

Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket. Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook.

Important information about portable electric vehicle charging

- Charging an electric vehicle can stress a building's electrical system more than a typical household appliance.
- Before you plug into any electrical outlet, have a qualified electrician inspect and verify the electrical system (electrical outlet, wiring, junctions and protection devices) for heavy-duty service at a 10 A continuous load.
- Electrical outlets may wear out with normal usage or be damaged over time, making them unsuitable for electric vehicle charging.
- Check the electrical outlet / plug while charging and discontinue use if the electrical outlet / plug is hot, then have the electrical outlet serviced by a qualified electrician.
- When outdoors, plug into an electrical outlet that is weatherproof while in use.
- Mount the charging cable to reduce strain on the electrical outlet / plug.

Mode 3 charging cable



1 Vehicle plug

2 Plug for wall box / AC charging station

Mode 3 charging cables are used for charging at wall boxes and AC charging stations. A mode 3 charging cable provides a vehicle plug and a plug for the wall box / AC charging station. Wall boxes / AC charging stations may provide an integrated mode 3 charging cable. For more information on the mode 3 charging cable, refer to the manual of the charging cable manufacturer.

Mode 4 charging cable

Note

Only use DC charging cables shorter than 30 meters.

Mode 4 charging cables are used for DC charging. Since mode 4 charging cables are integrated within DC charging stations, they only provide a vehicle plug.

Charging

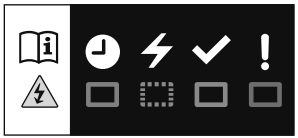
⚠ Warning



Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions.
If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit.

In order to ensure the compatibility of plug and outlet, different labels are used. The labels are located on the inside of the vehicle's charging port flap. Make sure to connect only a cable of the same type.

Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type/Voltage range
C	Charging connector, vehicle side	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
C	Charging socket, charger side	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
K	Charging connector, vehicle side	COMBO 2	DC 50 V - 500 V



The start of charging is indicated by the green flashing of the status indicator at the charging port and at the control box of the charging cable if available.

State of charging indicator light	Meaning
Steady white	Welcome lighting on opening the flap
	and disconnecting the charging cable.
Flashing white	Charging initialisation.
Steady blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging.
Steady green	Charging complete. The charging indicator lamp goes off after about 2 minutes as the vehicle's functions go into standby. The indicator lamp comes on again when the vehicle is unlocked with the Keyless Entry and Start system or when a door is opened to indicate that the battery is fully charged.
Steady red	Malfunction.

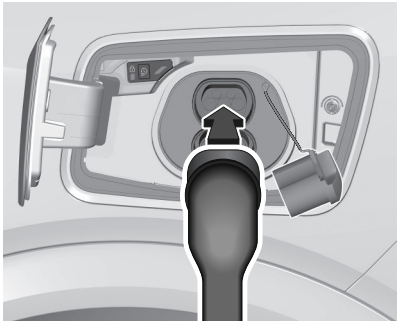
When charging at a public AC charging station / public DC charging station,

follow the instructions for the use of the respective charging station. Public AC charging stations may not provide an integrated charging cable. In this case, a portable mode 3 charging cable is required.

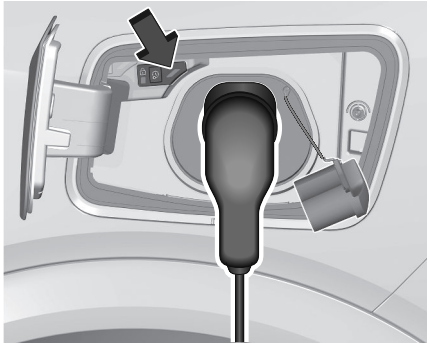
1. Press P and switch off the vehicle.



2. Push the charging port flap to release it.
3. If necessary, take the charging cable out of the load compartment.
4. If necessary, plug in the plug of the charging cable into the corresponding port of the external power source.



5. Plug in the vehicle plug of the charging cable into the charging port of the vehicle.



The start of charging is indicated by the green flashing of the status indicator at the charging port and at the control box of the charging cable if available.

Once charging, the vehicle plug will be locked to the charging port and cannot be disconnected while charging is active.

Cancelling the charging process

Note

At public charging stations, the cancelling and subsequent resuming of the charging process may cause additional costs.

Once the charging process has started, only the driver's door can be unlocked without cancelling the charging process. Therefore, activate the driver's door only function in the vehicle personalisation.

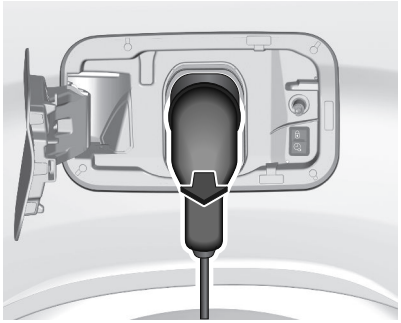
Press on the remote control to cancel the charging process at any time.

Press twice to cancel the charging process at any time if the function **driver's door only** is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

Stop charging

The high-voltage battery is fully charged if the status indicator on the charging port permanently illuminates green.

1. Unlock the vehicle before removing the vehicle plug from the charging port.
   If the vehicle is already unlocked, lock the vehicle and unlock it again.



2. Disconnect the vehicle plug of the charging cable from the charging port within 30 seconds after unlocking.
3. Close the charging port flap by pressing firmly in the centre to latch properly.
4. Disconnect the charging cable from the external power source.
5. If necessary, store the charging cable in the load compartment.

While the charging cable is plugged into the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be driven.

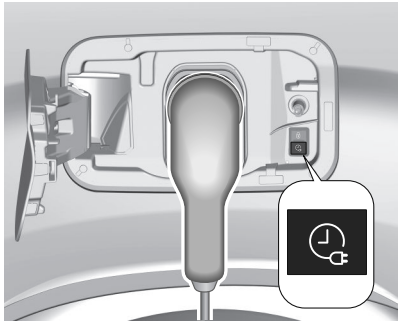
Programmable Charging

By default, charging starts as soon as the charging cable is connected to the charging port of the vehicle. It is also possible to schedule charging using the Info Display.
Programmable charging is only possible when charging at a domestic electrical outlet / Green'Up socket or a wall box.
Depending on the infotainment system, there are two different ways to use programmable charging via the Info Display:

Navigation System / Multimedia Pro



1. Press ⌂
2. Touch ⚡
3. Select **Charging**
4. Touch
5. Define the number of hours and minutes after which the charging process starts.
6. Touch **OK**.
7. Plug in the vehicle.



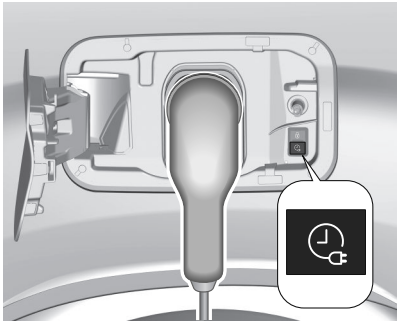
8. Within one minute, press to activate programmable charging.
9. Depending on version, lock the vehicle.

The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

Multimedia



1. Press ⊞
2. Touch
3. Define the number of hours and minutes after which the charging process starts.
4. Touch ✓ to confirm.
5. Plug in the vehicle.

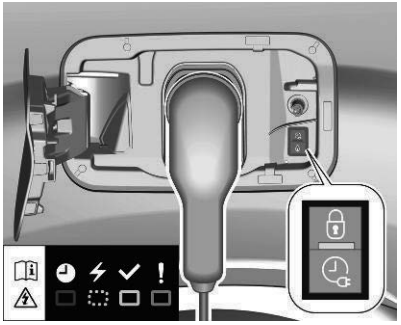


The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

6. Within one minute, press to activate programmable charging.
7. Depending on version, lock the vehicle.

The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

Charging Status



If the vehicle is plugged in and the ignition is switched off, the charging status indicator indicates the following:

- Illuminates white: welcome lighting when charging port flap is opened
- Illuminates green: charging complete
- Flashes green: charging in process
- Illuminates red: charging fault
- Illuminates blue: programmable charging active

A charging fault has occured if the vehicle is plugged in and the charging status indicator is off.
Further charging status indicators are located on the control box of the basic domestic cable (mode 2) / enhanced domestic cable (mode 2).

Vehicle To Load (V2L)

Vehicle to Load (V2L) is a function that allows the use of the traction battery to power or charge external devices as long as the battery is above 30% charge. If the battery reaches 30%, the energy transfer will stop automatically.
The adapter plugs into the charging port of the vehicle and offers a standard 230V / 16A plug for connecting the external device.

⚠ Warning

Misuse of the adapter can cause electric shocks or start a fire.

⚠ Warning

The device is waterproof against rainfall, but it is not advisable to connect it in bad weather as it can damage the external device. The V2L adapter does not resist being submerged.

Tip
Using the device will drain the battery, check that the vehicle is charged sufficiently to reach a charging point.
Tip
Pay attention to the vehicle and the external device when using V2L so that only the intended persons use the system.
Tip
For more information, please refer to the manual supplied with the V2L device.

Activation

With the vehicle unlocked and ignition ON:

- Plug in the adapter in the socket.
- Press the button on the adapter.
- When the LED on the adapter is illuminated steady green, plug the external device into the adapter

When connected, the infotainment display will open a dedicated Energy Transfer page, and the following LEDs will illuminate:


Flashing green


Steady



Deactivation

- Press the button on the adapter to stop powering the external device
- Unplug the external device
- Unplug the adapter and close the charging port.

Vehicle loading

Roof Bars

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information contact your workshop.

Follow the installation instructions and remove the roof rack when not in use.

Mounting roof rack

Vehicles with roof railing



Mounting points are located at the bottom of the roof railing.
Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions delivered with the roof rack.

⚠ Warning

Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.

Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

⚠ Warning

In the event of loading (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:
– Transverse bars on longitudinal bars: **80 kg**.
– Two transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.
– Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **150 kg**.
– An aluminium rack: **120 kg**.
– A steel rack: **115 kg**.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars or the roof rack and the fixings on the vehicle. Refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.



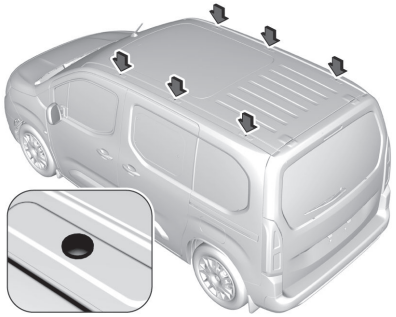
⚠ Warning

In the event of loading a 7-seat model (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:
– Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.
– An aluminium rack: **70 kg**.
– A steel rack: **65 kg**.

⚠ Warning

As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

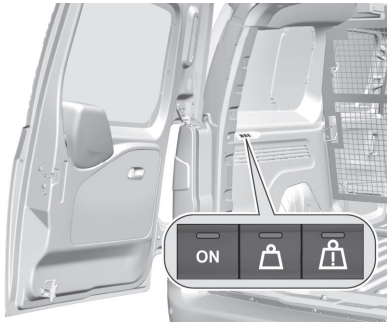
Vehicles without roof railing



To fasten a roof rack, unscrew the caps in the roof strips. Insert the mounting provisions, as instructed, in the retainer.

Overload Indicator

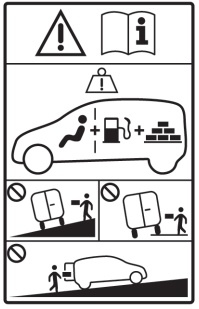
The overload indicator checks whether the vehicle is overloaded.
The function is designed to help avoiding overload and the consequent risks such as unstable road behaviour, tire blowout, premature wear etc.



If an overcharge is imminent, ON and ⚠ are illuminated.

If the vehicle is overloaded, ON, ⚠ and ⚠ are illuminated. In addition, ⚠ is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

Activation



Note

For optimal operation, park the vehicle on a horizontal surface.
Do not park the vehicle on a slope.
Do not park the vehicle with the wheels on the pavement.
The system is activated automatically each time the engine is started. In addition, the system can be activated manually by pressing ON in the loading area. After activation, the system operates for five minutes.

Trailer towing

General Information

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle.
Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.
The bulb outage detection function for trailer brake light cannot detect a partial bulb outage e.g. in case of four bulbs with a power of 5 W each, the function only detects lamp outage when only a single 5 W lamp remains or none remain.
Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye.
If this is the case use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling

ball bar in the vehicle to have it on hand if needed.

Tip

Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.

For more information about driving with a towing device fitted to a trailer and associated with the **Trailer stability assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing Recommendation

Trailer loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values that must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for inclines up to 12%.

The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 meters of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate .

Vertical coupling load

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents.

Always aim for the maximum vertical coupling load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h applies.

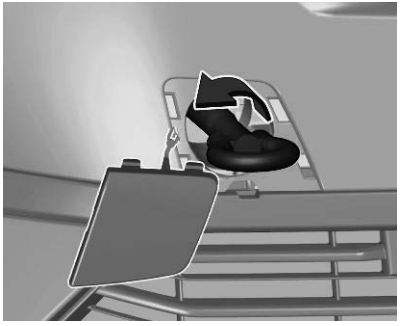
Recreational Towing

Towing The Vehicle



Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Insert the screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap carefully.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go, until it stops in a horizontal position.
Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.
The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.
Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper.

Caution

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

⚠ Warning

With a manual gearbox, move the gear lever into neutral.
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector into position **N**.
Failure to adhere to this instruction may lead to damage to braking system components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Switch the selector lever to neutral.
Release the parking brake.

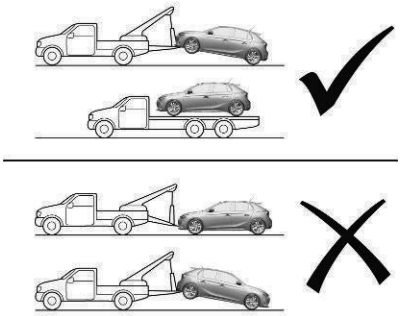
Caution

Never tow a vehicle equipped with All Wheel Drive (AWD) with the front or rear tires on the road. If you tow a vehicle equipped with AWD while the front or rear tires are rolling on the road, the drive system in the vehicle could be severely damaged. When towing vehicles equipped with AWD, all four tires must not be in contact with the road.

Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.
To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.



When towing an electric vehicle or a vehicle equipped with an automatic transmission, transport the vehicle on a platform or tow it with the front wheels lifted.
Seek the assistance of a workshop.
After towing, unscrew the towing eye.
Insert cap with the flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

Towing Another Vehicle

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion/ Manual	☑	☑	☑	☑
Internal combustion/ Automatic	☒	☑	☑	☒
Electric 2WD	☒	☑	☑	☒

Tip
In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).



Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage.
Insert the screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap carefully.
The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go, until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.
Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.
The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution
Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye.
Insert cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

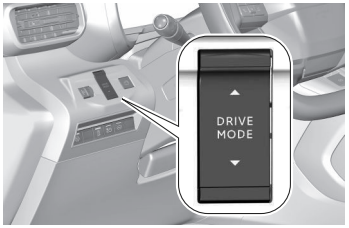
Driving Tips

Driving On Slippery Surfaces

Caution
The vehicle is designed to drive principally on-road, but it also enables driving off-road occasionally. However, do not drive on terrain where the vehicle could be damaged due to obstacles, such as stones among others and on terrain with steep inclines and poor grip. Do not cross waters.

Caution
When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can cause a collision or losing control.

Selective ride control is designed to optimize traction in low-grip conditions (snow, mud and sand).
It adapts to the terrain by acting on the front wheels, in doing so this saves the weight normally associated with a more conventional four wheel drive system.



Selective ride control allows to choose between five driving modes by the toggle switch:

- ESC off mode
- standard mode
- snow mode
- mud mode
- sand mode

A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre to confirm the chosen mode.

ESC off mode

The ESC and Traction Control are deactivated in this mode.

ESC and Traction Control are reactivated automatically from 50 km/h (30 mph) or everytime the ignition is switched on.

Standard mode

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different types of grip generally encountered in normal day to day driving.

Everytime the ignition is switched off, the system is automatically reset to this mode.

Snow mode

This mode adapts to the grip conditions encountered by each wheel when starting.

When advancing, the system optimizes wheel spin to guarantee the best acceleration based on the available traction. Recommended in cases of deep snow and steep inclines.

This mode is active up to a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph).

Mud mode

This mode allows considerable wheel spin at start-up for the wheel with the least grip, this removes mud and reestablishes traction.

Simultaneously, the wheel with the most grip is provided with the most torque possible.

This mode is active up to a speed of 80 km/h (48 mph).

Sand mode

This mode allows a small amount of simultaneous wheel spin on the two drive wheels, enabling the vehicle to advance and reduce the risk of sinking.

This mode is active up to a speed of 120 km/h.

⚠ Warning
Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS)

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations..... 171
Speed limiter 173
Switching on the system..... 173
Activation of the functionality..... 173
Setting speed by the driver..... 174
Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition..... 174
When passing the speed limit sign..... 174
After passing the speed limit sign... 174
Exceeding the speed limit..... 174
Deactivation of the functionality..... 174
Resume limit speed..... 174
Switching off the system..... 174
Fault..... 174
Fixed speed limiter 175
Cruise control 175
Switching on the system..... 175
Activation of the functionality..... 175
Setting speed by the driver..... 176
Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition..... 176
When passing the speed limit sign..... 176
After passing the speed limit sign... 176
Exceeding the set speed..... 176
Deactivation of the functionality..... 176
Resume stored speed..... 176
Switching off the system..... 176
System limitations..... 177
Fault..... 177
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 177
Switching on the system..... 178
Activation of the functionality..... 178
Setting speed by the driver..... 178
Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition..... 178
When passing the speed limit sign..... 179
After passing the speed limit sign... 179
Exceeding the set speed..... 179
Resuming stored speed..... 179
Adaptive cruise control on vehicles with automatic transmission..... 179
Setting the following distance..... 179
Detecting the vehicle ahead..... 180
Deactivation of the functionality..... 180
Switching off the system..... 180
Driver's attention..... 180
System limits..... 181
Hill considerations..... 181
Radar unit..... 182
Fault..... 182
Collision avoidance assistance system..... 182
Active Emergency Braking (AEB) 182
Brake Assist (BA) 186
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control system (TCS) 186
Advanced Grip Control 187
Operating modes..... 187
Activation/Deactivation..... 188
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 188
Fault..... 188
Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA) 189
Activation..... 189
Functionality..... 189
Operation conditions..... 189
Deactivation..... 190
Fault..... 190
Passenger side camera 190
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 191
Driving situations and related alerts..... 193
Operating limits..... 195
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 196
Activation..... 197
Deactivation..... 197
Fault..... 197
System limitations..... 197
Surround Vision 197
Visualization on the Info Display.... 198
Settings..... 198
Activation..... 198
Functionality..... 198
Standard view..... 198
Guidelines..... 198
180° view..... 199
Zoom view..... 199

Auto mode..... 199
Deactivation.....199
System limitations..... 199
Parking sensors 200
Rear parking assist.....200
Front-rear parking assist..... 201
Front-rear-lateral parking assist..... 202
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 203
Driver's Attention Assistance System 205
Activation or Deactivation.....205
Driving time alert..... 205
Driver drowsiness and distraction detection..... 206
Driver Attention Warning by Front Camera..... 206
Driver drowsiness and distraction detection with driver monitoring camera.....206
Reinitialization..... 207
Deactivation/Activation..... 207
Malfunction..... 207
Operating limits..... 207
Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System.....208
Hill Descent Control (HDC) 208
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 209
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) 209
Traffic Sign Assist (TSA) 209
Speed limit system 1..... 209
Updating navigation map data.....210
Speed limit system 2..... 210
Operation conditions..... 210
Updating data.....210
Other traffic signs..... 211
System limitations..... 211
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 211

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

Tip

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.

These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

Tip

Driving aids

You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

Tip
Manoeuvring aids

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

⚠ Warning

Radar(s)

The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g.mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g.heavy rain, snow), or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).

⚠ Warning

Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windshield area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.

In humid and cold weather, demist the windshield regularly.
Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windshield replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Tip
Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

⚠ Warning

Parking Sensors

The operation of the parking sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audio signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Tip
Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

⚠ Warning

Mats/Pedal trims

The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

Tip
Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Speed limiter

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.
The maximum speed can be set at speeds above 30 km/h (18 mph).
The driver can accelerate the vehicle up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

Switching On The System



Press .
Depending on version, either the speed limiter screen or only is displayed.
is grey indicating that the system is still not active.

Activation Of The Functionality

Press **OK** or to activate the speed limiter. is illuminated in green or white.

Setting Speed By The Driver



The preset speed can be changed by moving the thumb wheel to + to increase or − to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting Speed By The Speed Limit Recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new set speed for the speed limiter. Depending on version, the traffic sign assistant has to be activated to detect speed limit signs.

When Passing The Speed Limit Sign

With activated speed limiter, **OK?** is automatically displayed.
Press OK on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.
The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After Passing The Speed Limit Sign

With activated speed limiter, press **OK** on the steering wheel.
OK? is displayed.
Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.
The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding The Speed Limit

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly to the final point. In this case, the preset speed value flashes.
Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.
When exceeding the preset speed is not caused by depressing the accelerator pedal, e.g., when driving down a steep slope, an audible signal is given.

⚠ Warning

On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the preset speed. If necessary, depress the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.

Deactivation Of The Functionality

Press II▷, speed limiter is in pause mode. LIMIT is illuminated in grey. The vehicle is driven without speed limiter.
Speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

Resume Limit Speed

Press II▷ or **OK**, the stored speed limit will be obtained.

Switching Off The System

Press LIMIT, the speed limiter mode is deselected and the speed limiter screen is hidden from the Driver Information Centre or LIMIT extinguishes.

Fault

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have the system checked by a workshop.

Fixed speed limiter



If fitted to your vehicle, its speed can be limited to a fixed setting.
A label located in the passenger compartment indicates this maximum speed.
The fixed speed limiter is not a cruise control type function. It cannot be activated or deactivated by the driver during the trip.

Tip

The maximum speed is originally set according to the regulations in force in the country of sale.

This maximum speed cannot be changed by the driver.
If you wish to modify this maximum speed, contact a dealer.

Cruise control

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds above 40 km/h (24 mph). For vehicles with manual transmission, any gear has to be selected. For vehicles with automatic transmission, position D or the second or a higher gear in position M must be selected.
Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.
The system maintains the vehicle speed at the preset speed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.
The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly.
The status and preset speed is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Switching On The System



Press .
Depending on version, either the cruise control screen or only is displayed. is grey indicating that the system is still not active.

Activation Of The Functionality

If all operating conditions are met, **OK?** is displayed.
Press **OK** to store the current vehicle speed as speed setting and activate the cruise control. changes from grey to green or white indicating that system is active. The accelerator pedal can be released.
Alternatively, move the thumb wheel to to increase or to decrease the speed and store this speed as speed setting. Cruise control is immediately

activated if the thumbwheel is moved upwards or downwards. changes from grey to green or white.

Setting Speed By The Driver



If the system is active, the preset speed can be changed by moving the thumb wheel to to increase or to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting Speed By The Speed Limit Recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new set speed for the cruise control. Depending on version, the traffic sign assistant has to be activated to detect speed limit sign.

When Passing The Speed Limit Sign

With activated cruise control, **OK?** is automatically displayed.
Press OK on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.
The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After Passing The Speed Limit Sign

With activated cruise control, press **OK** on the steering wheel.
OK? is displayed Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.
The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding The Set Speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed.
While the set speed is exceeded, the set speed setting flashes.

Deactivation Of The Functionality

Press . Cruise control is in pause mode. is illuminated grey. The vehicle is driven without cruise control.
Cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.
The cruise control may be deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- brake pedal depressed
- traction control system or electronic stability control is operating
- reverse gear engaged, **N** selected or no gear engaged
- clutch pedal depressed for more than five seconds
- electric parking brake engaged

Resume Stored Speed

Press or **OK**, the stored speed will be set.

Switching Off The System

Press , the cruise control mode is deselected and the cruise control screen is hidden from the Driver Information Centre or .

System Limitations

⚠ Warning

Operating limits

Never use the system in the following situations:
– In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
– In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
– On winding or steep roads.
– On slippery or flooded roads.
– In poor weather conditions.
– In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
– Driving on a speed circuit.
– Driving on a rolling road.
– When using a ‘space-saver’ type spare wheel.
– When using snow chains or non-slip cover, snon-slip covers or studded tires.

When driving down a steep hill, the system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary.
When driving up a steep hill or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Fault

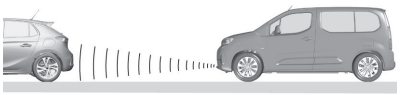
The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
In the event of a cruise control fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have the system checked by a workshop.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The adaptive cruise control is an enhancement of the cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain following distance to the vehicle ahead.



It uses a radar unit located in the front bumper to detect the vehicles ahead.
If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control.
The adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle.
It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle ahead, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.
If the vehicle ahead accelerates or changes lane, the adaptive cruise control progressively accelerates the vehicle to return to the stored set speed. If the driver operates the turn lights to overtake a slower vehicle, the adaptive cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle ahead to help passing it.
However, the set speed will never be exceeded.
If the vehicle ahead is moving too slowly and the selected following distance cannot be maintained anymore, a warning chime is given and a message is displayed. The message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.
On vehicles with manual transmission,

the system can brake the vehicle until 30 km/h (18 mph). On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system can brake the vehicle until a full stop. Depending on the version, the system can automatically accelerate the vehicle after a full stop.

⚠ Warning

The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down.
If the brake lights fail, the system does not operate.

Switching On The System



Press ACC successively until the adaptive cruise control mode is selected.
The adaptive cruise control screen is displayed. The system is still not activated.

Activation conditions

The system can be activated if the following conditions are met:

- vehicle speed between 30 km/h (18 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph) for vehicles with manual transmission, between 0 km/h and 180 km/h (112 mph) for vehicles with automatic transmission
- driver's door closed
- driver's seat belt fastened
- **D** selected or second or higher gear engaged
- parking brake released
- brake pedal depressed if vehicle stationary

Activation Of The Functionality

If all operating conditions are met, **OK?** is displayed.
Press **OK** to store the current vehicle speed and activate the cruise control. On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and a road element are displayed in green. The accelerator pedal can be released.
Alternatively, move the thumb wheel to + to increase or − to decrease the speed and store this speed. The cruise control is immediately activated if the thumbwheel is moved upwards or downwards. On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and the road element are displayed in green.

Setting Speed By The Driver



The set speed can be changed by moving the thumb wheel to + to increase or − to decrease thespeed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting Speed By The Speed Limit Recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new value for the adaptive cruise control.

When Passing The Speed Limit Sign

With activated adaptive cruise control, **OK?** is automatically displayed.
Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.
The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After Passing The Speed Limit Sign

With activated adaptive cruise control, press **OK** on the steering wheel.
OK? is displayed Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.
The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding The Set Speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed. If a slower moving vehicle is ahead, the following distance selected by the driver is restored.
While the set speed is exceeded, the set speed flashes on the adaptive cruise control screen.

⚠ Warning

Acceleration by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the Driver Information Centre.

Resuming Stored Speed

Press II▷ or OK to reactivate the adaptive cruise control at the stored speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control On Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the adaptive cruise control allows to maintain the selected distance behind a braking vehicle until a complete stop is reached.
If the system has stopped your vehicle behind another vehicle, the green control indicator Ⓐ is displayed next to the set speed setting. This symbol notifies that the vehicle is held automatically in the stop position.
While the vehicle is held in the stop position, the following recommendations should be followed:

- Do not leave the vehicle.
- Do not open the load compartment.
- Do not engage the reverse gear.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.

Within three seconds after the vehicle has been stopped by the system, the vehicle slowly moves off again. After three seconds, accelerate or press II▷ to drive away. Pay attention to the surroundings of the vehicle when driving away.
If the vehicle stays stopped for more than five minutes without any action by the driver, the electric parking brake is applied. Control indicator Ⓟ will illuminate. To release electric parking brake, press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

When the system is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Be always prepared to manually apply the brake to hold the vehicle stationary. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by adaptive cruise control. Always engage **P** and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

Setting The Following Distance

When the adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to

maintain the following distance selected by the driver.
The following distance can be set to close (1 bar), normal (2 bars) or far (3 bars).
If the engine is running and the adaptive cruise control is switched on (grey) or active (green), you can modify the following distance setting:



Press the button to display the current following distance setting in the Driver Information Centre.
Press the button successively to select the required following distance setting.
The selected following distance is indicated by full bars on the adaptive cruise control screen.

⚠ Warning

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.
Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

Detecting The Vehicle Ahead

If the system detects a vehicle in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control screen changes accordingly.

Deactivation Of The Functionality

Press II▷, adaptive cruise control is in pause mode. The preset speed is illuminated grey.
The adaptive cruise control is deactivated, but not disabled. The last stored set speed remains in memory for later usage.
The adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- brake pedal depressed
- traction control system or electronic stability control is operating
- reverse gear engaged, N selected or no gear engaged
- speed falls below 30 km/h (18 mph) for a vehicle with manual transmission
- risk of engine stalling in case of a vehicle with manual transmission
- clutch pedal depressed for more than 10 seconds
- electric parking brake engaged
- seat belt unfastened
- driver's door opened

Switching Off The System

Press ASSIST successively to switch adaptive cruise control off.

Driver's Attention

1. Use the adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.
2. Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), so that you could lose control of the vehicle.
3. Do not use the adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or completely suppresses visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

4. Do not use the system when the spare wheel is in use.

System Limits

⚠ Warning

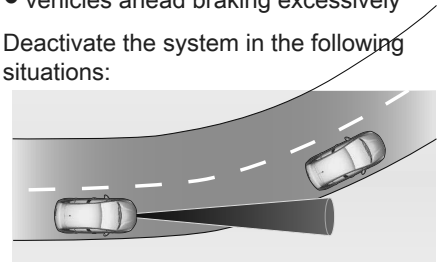
The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- The adaptive cruise control only considers traffic driving in the same direction.
- The adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians, cyclists or animals for braking and driving off.
- The adaptive cruise control does not consider stationary vehicles.

As the radar's field of detection is quite narrow, it is possible that the system may not detect:

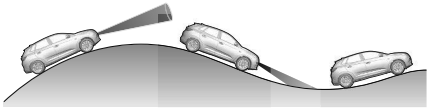
- vehicles of reduced width, e.g. motorcycles, scooters
- vehicles not running in the middle of the lane
- vehicles entering a corner
- vehicles suddenly pulling out or in
- vehicles ahead braking excessively

Deactivate the system in the following situations:



- when driving through a tight bend
- when approaching a roundabout
- when following a vehicle not detected by system, e.g., a motorcycle
- when the vehicle ahead sharply decelerates
- when a vehicle cuts in sharply

Hill Considerations

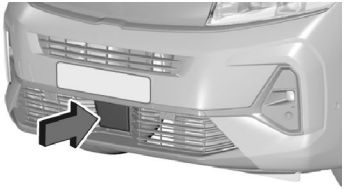


⚠ Warning

Do not use the adaptive cruise control on steep hill roads.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed.
When going downhill, you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed. Note that applying the brake deactivates the system.

Radar Unit



The radar unit is located in the middle of the front bumper.

⚠ Warning

The radar unit was aligned carefully during manufacture. Therefore, in the event of a front-end impact, do not use the system. The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the sensor behind may be affected and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a workshop to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

⚠ Warning

The usage of a licence plate support on the front bumper may affect the proper radar unit functionality. When using a licence plate support, follow the markings and indications on the front bumper.

Fault

In the event of an adaptive cruise control fault, a warning light is illuminated in the

Driver Information Centre and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre accompanied by an audible signal.
The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
Have the system checked by a workshop.
As a safety measure, do not use the system if the brake lights are faulty.
Do not use the system if the front bumper is damaged.

Collision avoidance assistance system

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

Active Emergency Braking (AEB)

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles and pedestrians directly ahead, when the driver does not actively take action either by manual braking or by steering. For vehicles equipped with camera and radar, active emergency braking also detects cyclists. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver may be warned by the forward collision alert.
The feature uses various inputs (e.g. camera sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

⚠ Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. It warns the driver if the vehicle is at risk of a collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist. Just before the imminent collision, it reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity. The system may not react to animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. The driver must always be

ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

Activating / deactivating the system

Active emergency braking is activated / deactivated in the Info Display.
Depending on version, deactivation is only possible at a standstill.
If deactivated, illuminates and a message is shown in the Driver Information Centre. Depending on version, the system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on next time.

Functionality

Depending on the vehicle configuration and the detected objects, there are several operational speed ranges.
Active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h (50 mph) when a pedestrian has been detected.
On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h (50 mph) when a stationary vehicle or a cyclist has been detected.
On vehicles equipped only with front camera, the active emergency braking operates from 5 km/h (3 mph) to 85 km/h (53 mph) when a moving vehicle has been detected.
On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates from 5 km/h (3 mph) to 140 km/h (87 mph) when a moving vehicle has been detected.
The system includes:

- forward collision alert
- smart brake assist
- automatic braking

Forward collision alert

The forward collision alert warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the vehicle ahead, with a cyclist or a pedestrian.

Alerting the driver

The driver is warned by following alerts:

- Level 1: A warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre, when the distance to the vehicle ahead gets too small.
- Level 2: A warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and immediate driver's action is required.
- Level 3: Depending on version, the vehicle may produce a short brake jerk to confirm the risk of collision. The immediate driver's action is required.

⚠ Warning

When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, a level 2 alert may be displayed without a level 1 alert before.
Level 1 alerts depend on the alert sensitivity set. This alert type is only displayed in case of moving vehicles. At lower speed it is disabled.

Selecting the alert sensitivity

Note
If the alert sensitivity setting with the longest distance is set, the system warns earlier. This increases the safety, but increases the amount of alerts if the legal safety distance is not kept. To reduce the number of alerts, select a shorter alert sensitivity setting.
Three alert sensitivities can be selected in the driver assistance systems menu. The chosen setting will be memorised when the ignition has been switched off. The alert sensitivity will vary based on selected alert setting.

Automatic braking

Just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash.

If active emergency braking is applied, flashes in the Driver Information Centre. If active emergency braking is finished, flashes for a few seconds. During this time, active emergency braking cannot be applied if there is a risk of a further collision.
Depending on version, below a speed of 30 km/h (18 mph) or 50 km/h (30 mph), automatic braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop. If the speed exceeds this limit, automatic braking reduces the speed. However, the driver must apply the brake to come to a complete stop.

- Automatic transmission: If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for a certain time.

Keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

- Manual transmission: If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall. Keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Cruise control will be deactivated when an emergency automatic braking occurs. In some cases, the driver may wish to override the automatic braking provided by the active emergency braking system.

Firmly apply the accelerator pedal or firmly turn the steering wheel to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Active emergency braking will not brake automatically outside of its operating speed range.

Smart brake assist

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking. This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.
Smart brake assist will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released.

Operation conditions

Active emergency braking only works when:

- the brake system is operational
- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control are activated
- the seat belts of the front seats and depending on version of the rear seats are fastened
- constant speed on unwinding roads

Active emergency braking is automatically deactivated in the following cases:

- A spare wheel with smaller diameter is detected.
- A fault with the brake pedal switch or with the left or right brake light is detected.
- A fault in the active emergency braking system, in the electronic or in the brake system is detected.
- A severe crash, e.g., with airbag deployment was detected.

System limitations

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt
- windscreen damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- damaged or deformed front bumper or front bumper covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers

- radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- front camera out of its regular position
- automatic braking not available, e.g. brake discs cooling going on
- brake pedal continuously used for a long time, e.g. on a long downhill road
- winding or hilly roads
- system initialisation process after battery disconnection
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. rain, fog or snow
- vehicle ahead creating road spray

After an impact or when damages are visible have the vehicle checked by a workshop.
The system performance may be affected by:

- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control in progress
- vehicle battery voltage out of range
- wet road reflecting lights
- close vehicles ahead
- tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer
- banked roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- vehicle overloaded

The driver must not overload neither the load compartment nor the roof of the vehicle.
If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the sensors must be cleaned.
If the system is temporarily affected and no driver action is required, no message is displayed.
Complete attention is always required while driving, and be ready to take action to avoid crashes.
We recommend deactivating the system in the vehicle personalisation in the following cases:

- when towing a trailer or caravan
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack
- when the vehicle is being towed
- when performing any maintenance with ignition on
- when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains
- when a spare wheel is fitted that is smaller than the other wheels
- before using an automatic car wash
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop
- if the windscreen has been damaged close to the camera
- if the front bumper has been damaged or deformed
- if the radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- if the brake lights are not working

Fault

If the system has been deactivated, illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.
If the system has a fault, illuminates in the Driver Information Centre, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a workshop.
If no message is displayed, stop the vehicle and check whether sensors or front camera are covered.
If the system does not work properly or is not available, e.g. during the

initialisation, illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.
may also illuminate if the infotainment system has an issue.
If and illuminate in the Driver Information Centre after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, consult a workshop.

Brake Assist (BA)

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.
Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.
Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required.
Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control system (TCS)

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip.
As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer / oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.
ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control system (TC). It prevents the driven wheels from spinning.
The TC is a component of the ESC.
Traction Control improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip, by preventing the driven wheels from spinning.
As soon as the driven wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

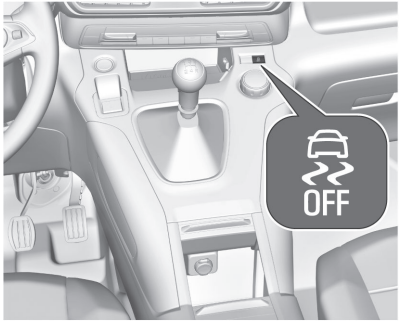


ESC and TC are operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator extinguishes.
When ESC and TC operate, flashes.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Deactivation



Depending on version ESC and TC can be deactivated:

- by pressing the button The LED in the button illuminates,

A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when ESC and TC are deactivated.
ESC and TC are reactivated by pressing the button again, via the Info Display, by applying the brake or in the case that the vehicle is driven faster than 50 km/h (30 mph).
The LED in the button a extinguishes when ESC and TC are reactivated.
ESC and TC are also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system,

the control indicator illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.
Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Advanced Grip Control

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

This special patented traction control system improves grip on snow, mud and sand.
Tip
For optimum grip on snow, it is recommended that you fit the vehicle with winter tires.
For optimum system performance, contact a dealer to choose the most suitable tires.
Tip
Recommendations

The vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads, but it may occassionally drive on other less passable terrain.
However, it does not permit off-road driving:

- Driving on terrain that can damage the underbody or tear off elements (e.g. fuel pipe, fuel cooler) by obstacles or stones in particular.
- Driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip.
- Crossing a waterway

Operating Modes

Snow

This mode constantly adapts the level of wheel spin to offer maximum traction according to the snow conditions (a lot of wheel spin in thick snow; very little on ice). The wheel spin is also adapted to the conditions encountered whendriving uphill by optimising the acceleration of the vehicle.(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

Mud

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much traction torque as possible.
When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

⚠ Warning
Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

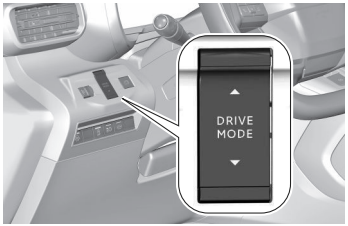
Activation/Deactivation



With a manual gearbox



With a automatic gearbox or drive selector



1. Press the **DRIVE MODE** button; the various modes are displayed on the touch screen.
2. Select **"Snow"**, **"Mud"** or **"Sand"** depending on the context on the right side of the window.
3. Close the window by clicking the cross.

The chosen mode continues to be displayed in the instrument panel.

1. To deactivate, select **"Normal"** mode or any other driving mode.

The system is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

⚠ Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.
ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.
ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.
For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.
When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically depending on the force of deceleration. They are switched off automatically the first time you accelerate.
After starting off, the system performs a self-test that may be audible.



Fault

⚠ Warning
If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During

hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA)

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified blind spot zone. The system displays a visual alert in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.
Side blind spot alert uses some of the advanced parking assist sensors which are located in the front and rear bumper on both sides of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.

The system does not detect:
- vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching
- pedestrians, cyclists or animals

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn signal.

Activation

The system can be activated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display.

Functionality



When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forwards, an LED will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror.
The LED comes on immediately when being passed.

The LED comes on after a delay when passing another vehicle slowly.

Operation Conditions

The following conditions must be fulfilled for proper operation:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes
- the speed of your vehicle is between 12 and 140 km/h (7 and 87 mph)
- passing a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 10 km/h (6 mph)
- another vehicle is passing with a speed difference of less than 25 km/h (15 mph)
- the traffic flow is normal
- driving on a straight or slightly curved road
- the vehicle is not pulling a trailer
- the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow
- the warning zones in the door mirrors or the detection zones on front and rear bumper ar not covered with adhesive labels or other objects

No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects, e.g. parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs
- in very dense traffic, when moving vehicles might be confused with a stationary object
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner
- when passing or being passed by a very long vehicle, e.g. lorry, coach, which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision
- when passing too quickly

Deactivation

The system can be activated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display. The state of the system is memorised when switching off the ignition.
The system is automatically deactivated when towing an electrically connected trailer.

Due to adverse weather conditions such as heavy rain, false detections may occur.

Fault

In the event of a fault, illuminates in the Driver Information Centre and a message is displayed. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Passenger side camera

⚠ Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The passenger side camera monitors the side of the vehicle.



The camera is mounted at the bottom of the exterior mirror on the passenger side. The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Camera with view to the rear

The camera shows the blind spot area of the passenger side.
The passenger side view is displayed beside the standard rear view in the rear view display.

Switching on



The camera is switched on when the vehicle is running in forward gear and the passenger side view is selected from the rear view display or by pressing the button on the lever.

Switching off

The camera is deactivated when another view type is selected.

System limitations

The passenger side camera may not operate properly when:

- the surrounding is dark
- the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt.
- Clean the lense, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth
- there are extreme temperature changes

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

⚠ Warning

Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure or crossing of a verge or hard shoulder (depending on version).
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Operating conditions

- Vehicle speed between 65 and 180 km/h (40 and 112 mph).
- Road marked with a central dividing line.
- Steering wheel held in both hands.
- Direction indicators not activated.
- ESC system activated and operational.

⚠ Warning

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Operation

As soon as the system identifies a risk of involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane boundary (e.g. grass verge), it performs the trajectory correction necessary to restore the vehicle to its original lane.The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning light flashes during trajectory correction.Press the **" Navigation "** application to display the navigation home screen.

Tip

The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre).
The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated. While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

Unavailability After Battery Disconnection

Lane Keeping Assist can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

Driving Situations And Related Alerts

The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing correction for more than 10 s. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time.
The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations.
The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Display	Comments
ON		Function deactivated.
ON	None.	System active, conditions not met: – Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h). – No lane marking recognised. – ESC operation triggered. – "Sporty" driving.
ON		Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle, failure).
ON	None.	Lane marking detected. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of line crossing is detected. The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.

Function status	Display	Comments
ON	 **"Hold the steering wheel" or "Stay in lane"** (depending on version)	If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. If the steering wheel is not held properly, an audio warning sounds, accompanied by a message, until the trajectory correction is completed or the driver has grasped the steering wheel correctly. The duration of audio warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.

Operating Limits

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.
The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
- Speed below 65 km/h (40 mph) or greater than 180 km/h (112 mph).
- Electrical connection to a trailer.
- Use of a"space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
- Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Driving over lane markings.
- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Crossing the inside line on a bend.
- Driving on a tight bend.
- Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.
- Narrow lane detected.
- Driving in havy curves and construction areas.

⚠ Warning

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– Insufficient contrast between the road surface and the verge or hard shoulder (e.g. shade).
– Lane markings worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud) or multiple (e.g. roadworks).
– Close proximity to the vehicle in front (lane markings may not be detected).
– Roads that are narrow, winding.

⚠ Warning

Depending on version, only lane departure warning system is active, when a system fault is present, a spare wheel used, Electronic Stability Control is not activated or e.g a trailer is attached.

Risk of undesirable operation

- The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
- When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
- Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
- Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation/Activation

The system shall be deactivated by the driver when the vehicle is being towed. By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



It is configured in the **ADAS** Info Display application or via the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.

LKA shall be deactivated by the driver when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ Warning

Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization (through the Connect system) until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.



When a failure is detected in the sound module, the warning light appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by a display message.
No warning chime will sound, nor fot the drive assistance system.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fault



This symbol appears in the Driver Information Center in the event of a fault, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.



This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message**"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"**if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The lane departure warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle crosses a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver.

Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.
No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal or heavy steering.
When the system recognises an unintended lane departure, the control indicator rapidly flashes yellow.

⚠ Warning

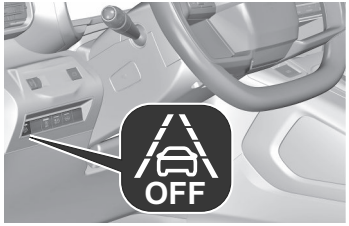
This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

For correct operation of the system, the following preconditions must be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h (40 and 112 mph)
- the turn lights are not activated
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner

- no system fault is present that prevents corrections

Activation



If the system is activated, the LED in the button is not illuminated. To activate the system when the system is deactivated, press .
Depending von version, the system is automatically reactivated at the next vehicle start.

Deactivation

To deactivate the system, press until LED in the button is illuminated.
LDW shall be deactivated by the driver when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ Warning

Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization (through the Connect system) until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Fault

In the event of a fault, and appear in the Driver Information Centre, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

System Limitations

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.
The system performance may be affected by:

- camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- roads with poor lane markings

Surround Vision

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

This system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a nearly 180° picture in the Info display, like a bird's eye view.

⚠ Warning

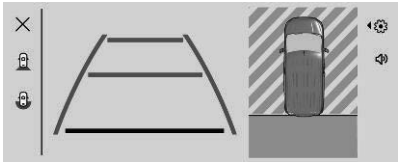
The panoramic view system does not replace driver vision. It will not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other objects outside of the camera view area, e. g. below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.
Do not drive or park the vehicle using only the panoramic view system.
Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either edge of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen.
Depending on the load of the vehicle, the inclination of the vehicle may be changed including the view of the camera.

The system may use:

- rear camera, installed in the tailgate
- ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper

Visualization On The Info Display



The screen is divided into four areas, from left to right:

- selectable views: standard and 180° view
- view visualization
- top view
- settings, muting and unmuting the audible signal

The parking sensors complete the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Settings

The following settings : can be adjusted volume of the audible signal.
The settings can be closed by pressing on the side of the Info Display or by pressing somerwhere else on the Info Display.

Activation

The panoramic view system is activated by:

- engaging the reverse gear when the engine is switched on
- manual activation in the Info Display when the vehicle speed is below 16 km/h (10 mph)

Functionality

Different views can be selected in the left part of the display. Change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre by selecting a view.

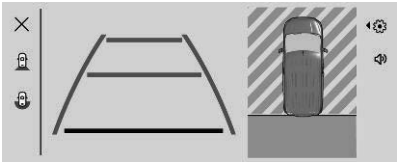
- standard view
- 180° view

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.
Standard view is enabled by default.
This setting can be changed in the settings of the panoramic view system in the Info Display.
Depending on version, auto mode is activated by default. In this mode, the system selects the best view, standard or zoom, to display according to the information from the parking sensors.
The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Standard View

The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the
vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the position of the steering wheel.
This view is available in auto mode or in the view selection menu.

Guidelines



The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the

edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

180° View



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
This view is available from the view selection menu only.

Zoom View



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to reconstruct a view from above the vehicle in its near surroundings. Thus, the vehicle can be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.
This view is displayed automatically as soon as the vehicle approaches an obstacle during a manoeuvre.

Auto Mode

If the vehicle is equipped with ultrasonic parking sensors, the automatic view changes from rear view to a view from above, as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.
If the vehicle is not equipped with ultrasonic parking sensors, the view needs to be changed manually in the Info Display.

Deactivation

Panoramic view system is deactivated when:

- a certain forward speed is exceeded or, depending on version, if reverse gear is not engaged for seven seconds.
- by pressing the icon ⊗ in the left upper corner of the Info Display.

System Limitations

Caution
For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lenses of all cameras always clean. For the rear view camera, there is a washer nozzle which will be activated when the rear window washer is operating. If manually cleaning the lenses of the cameras, rinse the lenses with water and wipe with a soft cloth. Do not clean the lenses with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

The panoramic view system may not operate properly when:

- surrounding is dark
- sun or beam of headlights is shining directly into camera lenses

- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- camera lenses blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense using the washer nozzle as described. The camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt.
- the tailgate will be opened
- vehicle is electrically connected to a trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- vehicle had a rear end accident
- extreme temperature changes

Caution

It is very important that any repair to the panoramic view system is performed accurately according to dealer specifications. Otherwise, the system may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from the system.

Parking sensors

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

General information

The rear system is deactivated when a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.
Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

Rear Parking Assist

The system warns the driver with audible signals and a display indication against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle while the reverse gear is engaged.
The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

Activation

After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Deactivation

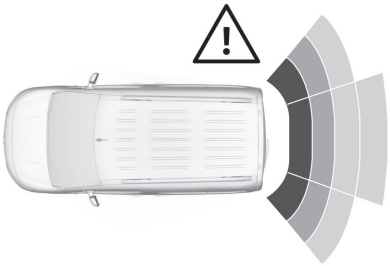
The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

Indication

As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and the symbol 1 may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.
If the vehicle stops for more than three seconds, if the automatic transmission is in P position, or if no further obstacles are detected, no audible signals are given.

Note

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the Info Display has been switched off.



Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display . When the obstacle is very close, ⚠ for danger is displayed.

Muting the sound / closing the display indication

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed and an obstacle gets closer, only the P)) flashes.
When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h (6 mph) the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

Front-Rear Parking Assist

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving audible signals and display indication.
It uses two different audible signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.
The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper

Activation

After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Deactivation

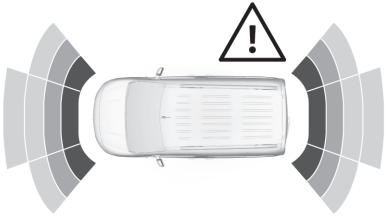
The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

Indication

As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and the symbol P)) may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.
Audible signals are given via front or rear loudspeakers depending on which detected obstacle is nearest to the vehicle.
If the vehicle stops for more than three seconds, if the automatic transmission is in P position, or if no further obstacles are detected, no audible signals are given.

Note

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the Info Display has been switched off.



Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display.

Muting the sound / closing the display indication

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed

and an obstacle gets closer, only the P)) flashes.
When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h (6 mph) the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

Front-Rear-Lateral Parking Assist

The front-rear-lateral parking parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front, behind and at the sides of the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving audible signals and display indication.
The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper and on the flanks of the vehicle.

Activation

When a forward gear has been engaged, the front parking assist is activated, as soon as an obstacle is detected in the front and the speed of the vehicle is below 10 km/h.
When the reverse gear has been engaged, the rear parking assist and the front parking assist are activated.
After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Deactivation

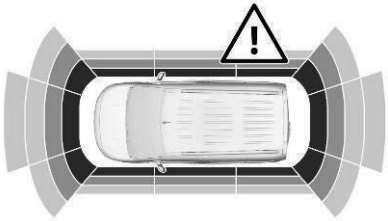
The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

Indication

As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and the symbol P)) may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.
Audible signals are given via front or rear loudspeakers depending on which detected obstacle is nearest to the vehicle.
If the vehicle stops for more than three seconds, if the automatic transmission is in P position, or if no further obstacles are detected, no audible signals are given.

Note

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the Info Display has been switched off.



Additionally, the distance to obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display.

Muting the sound / closing the display indication

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed and an obstacle gets closer, only the P)) flashes.
When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h (6 mph) the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

System limitations

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, C illuminates in the Driver Information Centre. message

is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds.
In the case of a permanent fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

⚠ Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.
Special attention must be paid to low obstacles, which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

Caution

In the case of a severe failure of the vehicle with the need to stop the vehicle, the system is deactivated.
In the case of a gearbox failure, the parking assist system is not active, when reverse gear is engaged.
In the case of a loudspeaker failure, the audible signals may not be given.
Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.
If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the sensors must be cleaned.

Performance of the parking assist system may be limited or the functionality may not be available at all if illuminates or if the image shown on the Info Display is frozen or if the screen is black.
Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.
Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.
Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.
Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle.
During a reverse parking manoeuvre, the system does not consider a mounted coupling ball bar. The driver must consider this additional length.

Note
It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).
Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist may be reduced if the licence plate is bent or a licence plate support is used.
Low curbs and surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

Depending on version, camera is mounted above the license plate in the tailgate / left rear door.

⚠ Warning

The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and

the parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.
Do not reverse or park the vehicle using only the rear view camera.
Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

Camera at top of the left rear door



The view of the camera is displayed in the rear view display.

Switching on



The rear view camera is switched on when the vehicle is running in forward gear and the rear view is selected from the rear view display or by pressing the button on the lever.
When operating with a trailer, the rear view is still available.

Switching off

The rear view camera is switched off when the rear view display is switched off.

Camera above the license plate on the tailgate



The camera is mounted in the rear bumper above the number plate.

Activation

Rear view camera is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Functionality

The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Guidelines

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m.

The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.
Depending on version, the outer guidelines can also be static and the gap between both lines represent the vehicle width including the exterior mirrors.The inner curved guidelines represent the maximum steering angle in either direction.

Deactivation

The camera in the rear bumper is deactivated when:

- a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch
- a forward speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) is exceeded.
- by pressing the icon ⊗ in the left upper corner of the Info Display.

System limitations

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- surrounding is dark
- sun or beam of headlights is shining directly into camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- camera lenses blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense using the washer nozzle as described.
- the tailgate will be opened
- vehicle is electrically connected to a trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- vehicle had a rear end accident
- extreme temperature changes

Driver's Attention Assistance System

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



The driver alert system monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver.

Depending on version, monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings or on the analysis of head, eye and face movements of the driver.
The system cannot replace the need for vigilance from the driver.

Taking a break is recommended as soon as feeling tired or at least every two hours. Do not drive when feeling tired.

Activation Or Deactivation

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.

Driving Time Alert

The driver gets notified by a pop-up reminder symbol on the instrument panel simultaneously with an acoustic alert if the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h). The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves.
The counting of driving time alert is reset when the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes or the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened.

Driver Drowsiness And Distraction Detection

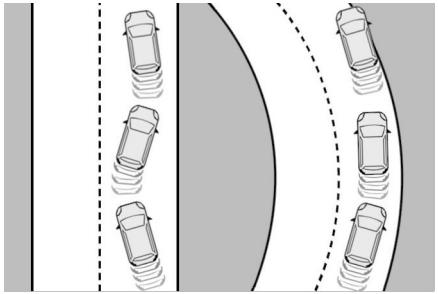
Depending on version the system uses different cameras to monitor the driver's level of vigilance:

- a front view camera outside the vehicle at the top of the windshield
- a driver monitoring camera inside the vehicle on the driver side left of the windshield facing the driver

⚠ Warning

Do not look to the infrared LEDs, located next to the Driver Monitoring Camera closer than 25 cm.

Driver Attention Warning By Front Camera



The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 65 km/h.

The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring. During this period, the driver's individual driving behaviour is analyzed and no alert is given.
The camera detects variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings. If the trajectory of the vehicle suggests some level of drowsiness or inattention by the driver, an alert is triggered.
In some driving conditions such as poor road surface or strong winds etc., the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message, illuminates and an audible signal is given. After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with a message, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal and .

Driver Drowsiness And Distraction Detection With Driver Monitoring Camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 12 mph (20 km/h).
The system monitors and analyzes visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements. The system does not record any video nor is it capable of identifying the driver.
The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking
- microsleep patterns

If the system detects some facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for some time, or analyzes some level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given.



Additionally illuminates.

If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. microsleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by and a more pronounced audio signal.
Drowsiness and microsleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

Reinitialization

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialized in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below below 40 mph (65 km/h) for a few minutes
- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.



The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

or
Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**



Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator light on the instrument panel.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light lights up on the instrument panel with the message **" Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see Owner manual"** if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field is cleaned.
If the warning light still illuminates after cleaning the camera, have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light lights up on the instrument panel accompanied by a message indicating that the driver monitoring camera is not able to detect facial and/or eye movements due to e.g. sunglasses.

Operating Limits

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc.
- dazzle caused by headlamps of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.

- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads
- advanced lane keep assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- the driver is wearing sunglasses with an infrared transmittance of less than 70%

Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

The descent control system allows the vehicle to travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal.
The vehicle will automatically decelerate to a low speed and remain at that speed when the system is activated. Some noise or vibration from the brake system may be apparent when the system is active.

Caution

Use only when descending steep grades while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces. Unnecessary usage of the DCS function, such as while driving on normal roads, may damage the brake system and the ESC function.

Activation

Note
If hill descent control is active, active emergency braking is automatically deactivated.
The systems is only available for slopes greater than 5%.
At speeds below approx. 50 km/h (30 mph), press . The system can also be activated when the vehicle is stationary with the engine running.
The control indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated in green to show the system is activated.
When the vehicles starts its descent, the system controls the speed of the vehicle; accelerator and brake pedals can be released.

- If the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes rapidly.
- If the gearbox is in neutral or the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes slowly.

If the system is operating, the brake lights automatically come on.
If the speed exceeds 30 km/h (18 mph), regulation is paused. The indicator light in the instrument cluster changes to

grey. However, the LED of the button is still illuminated.
Regulation is automatically resumed if the speed falls below 30 km/h (18 mph), the slope is greater than 5% and the pedal release conditions are met.

Deactivation

Press again until the LED in the button extinguishes. The green control indicator in the instrument cluster extinguishes, too.
If the speed exceeds 70 km/h (43 mph), the system is automatically deactivated. The LED in the button extinguisher.

Fault

If the green control indicator does not illuminate or flash after pressing the button, there is a fault in the system. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.
When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, brakes remain on for further 2s. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Specific recommendations on cruise control**.



This additional system recognizes these road signs and displays them on the instrument panel.
As you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.
The selected display mode must be **"Driving"**.

⚠ Warning

The actual road signs always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)

⚠ Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

⚠ Warning

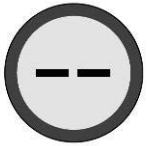
The actual traffic sign always takes priority over the traffic sign displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Depending on version, are two different systems available.

Speed Limit System 1

Using the camera at the top of the windscreen and the vehicle's integrated navigation system, this system provides speed limits and end of speed limits in the Driver Information Centre.
The system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

If the system is activated but does not detect a speed limit sign, the following sign is displayed:



If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by at least 5 km/h (3 mph), the speed limit displayed flashes about **10 seconds**.

Updating Navigation Map Data

To maintain the performance of the system, the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals. A navigation map update is available twice per year.
Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

Speed Limit System 2

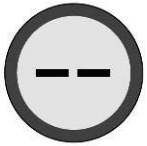
This system displays permanently speed limit information in the Driver Information Centre independent of vehicle speed. Providing the speed limit information involves the following systems, depending on version:

- camera at the top of the windscreen
- vehicle's integrated navigation system
- telematics service

If traveling on a road with no speed restrictions, e.g., on German motorways, the following sign is displayed:



If no speed limit information can be provided, the following sign is displayed:



If a new speed limit is provided, a confirmation chime is given.
The confirmation chime can be activated / deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.
If driving at a speed of at least 20 km/h (12 mph) and exceeding the speed limit, the speed limit displayed in the Driver Information Centre flashes after some time and an audible signal is given after some time. Time of occurrence varies. Both flashing and audible signal are terminated after a few seconds. Due to legal requirements, the audible signal can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation until the next time the ignition is switched on. If the audible signal is deactivated, illuminates for a few seconds.

In case of a failure, illuminates permanently. Consult a workshop.

Operation Conditions

To provide country-specific speed limit information, the vehicle needs to identify the country it is currently in. If a corresponding country list is available in the Info Display, the respective country has to be selected manually. Otherwise, the country is automatically selected.
To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.
Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.

Note

It is possible to report a permanent speed limit misinformation on our website.

Updating Data

To maintain the performance of the system, the vehicle software and the

navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals.
A navigation map update is available at least once per year. Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.
For vehicle software update consult a workshop.

Other Traffic Signs

The system detects traffic signs and displays them in specific page of the Driver Information Centre.



This system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

System Limitations

Traffic sign assistant may not operate properly when:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Driving with snow chains.
- The area of the windscreen, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- The visibility is limited because of the weather, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The vehicle ahead is creating road spray.
- Dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Speed limitation is painted on the surface of the road.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged or have been removed.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
- Depending on version, the navigation map data may be outdated.

Caution
The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to recognise certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system. Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Always adapt speed regarding road, traffic and weather conditions.

The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation.
When driving abroad make sure the vehicle uses the speed unit of the respective country. If necessary, select the correct units in the Info Display.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

⚠ Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

TPMS alerts the driver when one or more tires have a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System low pressure warning



Steady lighting of this warning light, accompanied by an audio signal; display of a message (depending on equipment).

1. Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
2. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
3. Using a compressor, such as the one in the tyre repair kit, check and adjust the pressures of all four tyres when cold.
4. If it is not possible to do this check, drive carefully at reduced speed.
5. In the event of a puncture, use the tyre repair kit or the light (depending on equipment).

⚠ Warning

Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.
The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tire blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.
The alert may be delayed at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h), or when adopting a dynamic driving style.

⚠ Warning

The tire under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tire pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tires, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):
– worsens road-holding.
– lengthens braking distances.
– causes premature wear of the tires.
– increases energy consumption.

Tip
The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tire pressure label.
For more information on the **Vehicle identification**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Tip
Spare wheel

The steel spare wheel does not have an under-inflation detection sensor

In case of emergency

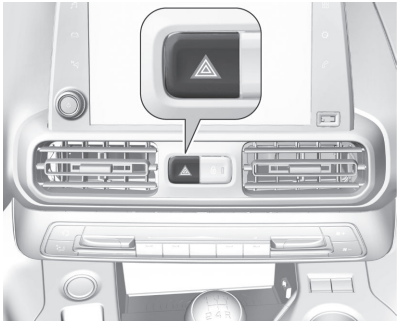
Hazard Warning Lights 213
Automatic Hazard Warning Lights..... 213
Activating Hazard Warning Lights..... 213
Assist and SOS 214
Making Emergency Call 214
SOS Call Feature 214
Automatic emergency call (eCall) 214
Warning triangle 215
Warning Triangle Kit..... 215
Assembling The Triangle..... 215
Placing the Triangle..... 215
Jacking the vehicle and wheel changing..... 215
Wheel Changing Toolkit 215
Spare Wheel..... 216
Wheel Removal 220
Wheel Installation 220
Tire Repair Kit 220
Tire Repair Toolkit..... 220
Tire Repair Procedure 221
Checking - Adjusting Tire Pressure..... 223
Jump starting 224
Lead-acid starter batteries 224
Symbols..... 225
Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery 225
12V Battery Charger 226
Disconnecting - Connecting Battery 227
Quick-Release Battery Clamp 227
After Being Recharged - Restarted..... 227
Refuelling In Emergency 228

Hazard Warning Lights

Automatic Hazard Warning Lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate. They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Activating Hazard Warning Lights



Operated by pressing ⚠.
When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on

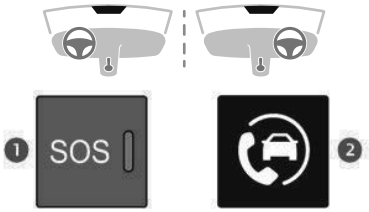
automatically, depending on the force of deceleration. They are switched off automatically, as soon as the vehicle is accelerated again.

Assist and SOS

Making Emergency Call

The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP).
A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.
In case of an emergency, press the red SOS button in the overhead console for more than two seconds.
The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.
Pressing the SOS button immediately a second time will terminate the call.
The LED switches off.
Automatic crash notification In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

SOS Call Feature



1 eCall (SOS)

2 ASSISTANCE

Note
Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and dealer.
It can be configured in the **Settings** Info Display menu.
Deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the **Two** buttons, then press the "**ASSISTANCE**" button to confirm.

Automatic Emergency Call (ECall)

Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option.
The eCall (SOS) system provides direct contact to the emergency services and is fully built into the vehicle. This contact is made either automatically via the sensors built into the vehicle, or by pressing button 1.
According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, GPS or GLONASS etc.
- To make an emergency call manually, press button 1 for more than 2 seconds. The lit indicator light and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services.

Note
In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
- Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

⚠ Warning

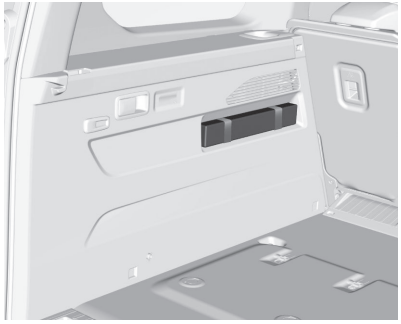
In the event that a serious accident is detected by the sensors built into the vehicle, such as the airbag control

unit, an emergency call is made automatically.

Note
The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free-of-charge.

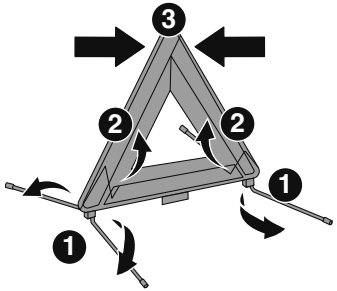
Warning triangle

Warning Triangle Kit



Depending on version, the warning triangle can be stowed in the load compartment. Secure it with the elastic straps.

Assembling The Triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

Placing The Triangle

Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Jacking the vehicle and wheel changing

Wheel Changing Toolkit

BEV

With tyre repair kit

The tools are located in the passenger foot-well.

With spare wheel

The tools are located under the passenger front seat.
To access the tools:

- With non-adjustable front seat, lift the seat cushion by placing your hand between the cushion and the backrest.
- With adjustable front seat, move the seat forward as far as possible.

The jack is located in the passenger foot-well.

ICE

With tyre repair kit

The kit is located under the under the passenger front seat.

With spare wheel

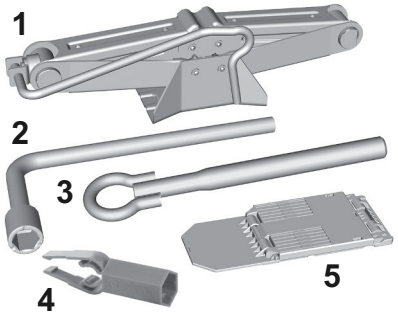
The jack is located under the passenger front seat.
The tools are located under the driver seat.

⚠ Warning

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tire.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

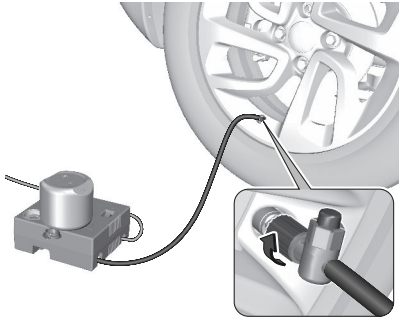
List of tools

The tool box is located either underneath the driver seat or the passenger seat.
The jack is located underneath the passenger seat.



The tool box consists:

- Jack
- Towing eye
- Tool to access the headlights
- Wrench
- Wheel bolt cover remover
- Choke



- 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker. For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

Spare Wheel

Tip
Visit this link to view explanatory videos:
https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though no label at the spare wheel indicates this.
If there is a label on the spare wheel, the permissible speed still depends on the country regulations.
Only mount one temporary spare wheel.
Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

Caution

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tires could affect driveability.

Have the defective tire replaced as soon as possible.

The spare wheel is located in a holder beneath the vehicle floor.

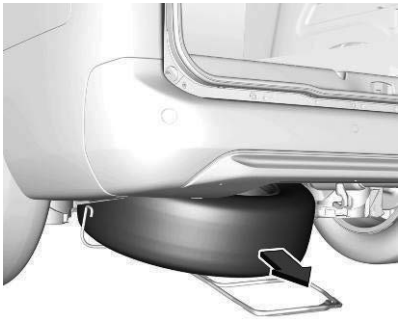
1. Depending on the version, open the tailgate or the rear doors



2. Fit the wheel wrench on one hexagon bolt. Turn it anticlockwise until the spare wheel holder is low enough allow the catch to be unhooked.



3. Lift the spare wheel holder and unhook the catch.
   Lower the spare wheel holder.



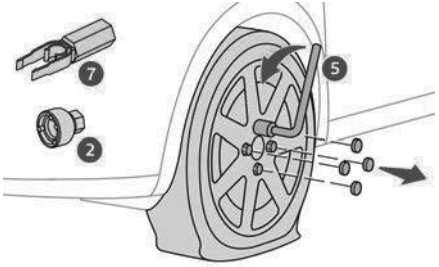
4. Remove the spare wheel.
5. Change the wheel.
6. Position the damaged wheel with the outside down in the spare wheel holder.
7. Lift the spare wheel holder and engage in the catch. The open side of the catch must point in the direction of travel.
8. Close the spare wheel holder by turning the hexagon bolt clockwise using the wheel wrench.
9. Stow wheel wrench in the storage.
10. Close the tailgate or the rear doors.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. The permissible maximum speed on the label on the temporary spare wheel is only valid for the factory-fitted tyre size.

Tip

Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling with both hands on one of the upper arms.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.





- If the vehicle has steel wheels, remove the wheel trim.
- To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool **7** (alloy wheels).
- Fit security socket **2** on wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
- **Slacken** the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

Tip
Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.

Fitting the spare wheel

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

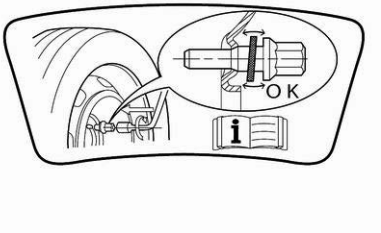
1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P.**
3. Place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
4. Remove the spare wheel.
5. Never change more than one wheel at once.
6. Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tire change.
7. The jack is maintenance-free.
8. If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (approx. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
9. Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
10. No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
11. Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
12. Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
13. Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

⚠ Warning

Do not grease wheel bolts.

⚠ Warning

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

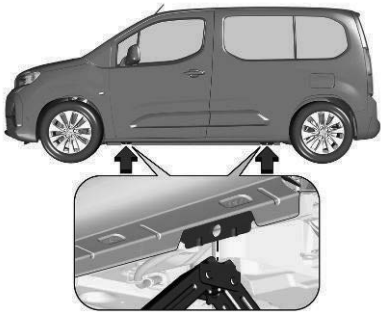


- Note that the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt if the wheel bolts for the alloy wheel rims are used. In this case, the washers do not come into contact with the spare wheel.

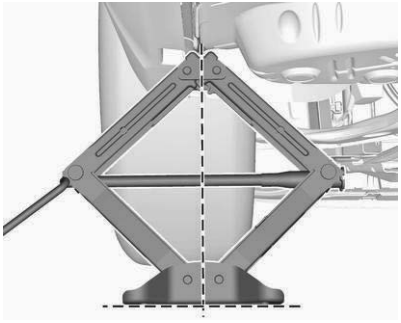
1. Disengage wheel bolt caps with the wheel bolt cover remover.
   Steel wheel rims with cover: Pull off the wheel cover.



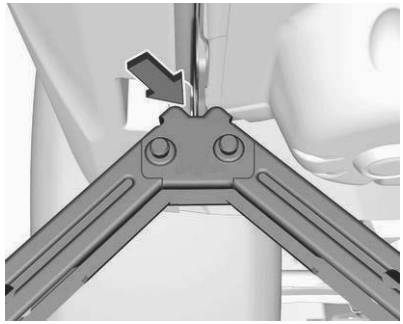
2. Attach the wheel wrench and loosen each wheel bolt by half a turn.
   The wheels might be protected by locking wheel nuts. To loosen these specific nuts, first attach the adapter onto the head of the nut before installing the wheel wrench. The adapter is located in the tool box.



3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



4. Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



Ensure that the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.



With the jack correctly aligned jack up until wheel is clear of the ground.

5. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
6. Change the wheel.

7. Screw on the wheel nuts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it is located securely and tighten each bolt in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 115 Nm.
10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tire valve before installing.
    Install wheel nut caps.
11. Stow the replaced wheel, the vehicle tools and the adapter for the locking wheel nuts.
12. Check the tyre pressure of the installed tyre and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

Wheel Removal

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.
3. Place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
4. If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (approx. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
5. Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
6. No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
7. Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
8. Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
9. Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

⚠ Warning

Do not grease wheel bolts.

⚠ Warning

With a non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel



Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).
Do not exceed the maximum authorized speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km).
Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.
The wheel trim from the replaced wheel must not be refitted.

Wheel Installation

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme systems and make other vehicle modifications.
Have the label with tyre pressures replaced.

⚠ Warning

The use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Tire Repair Kit

Tire Repair Toolkit

Minor damage to the tire tread can be repaired with the tire repair kit.

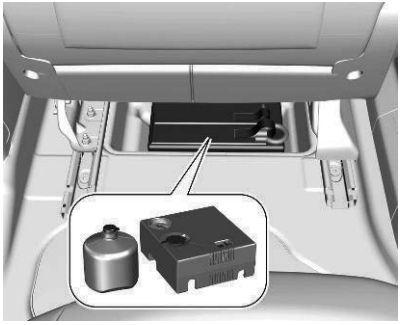
Tip
Do not remove foreign bodies from the tires.
Tire damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tire's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tire repair kit.

⚠ Warning
Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Do not use for a lengthy period. Steering and handling may be affected.

In the case of a flat tire: Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P.**

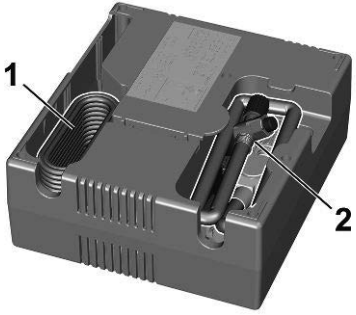
Tire Repair Procedure

Tip
Visit this link to view explanatory videos:
https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

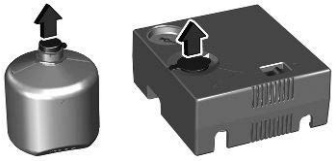


The tire repair kit is located in the storage compartment underneath the passenger front seat.

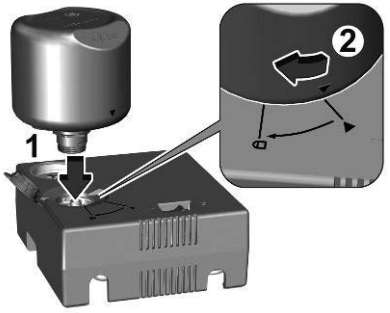
1. Remove the sealant bottle and the compressor.
2. Pull speed limit label from sealant bottle and place it in driver's visible area.



3. Remove the electrical connection cable (**1**) and air hose (**2**) from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.

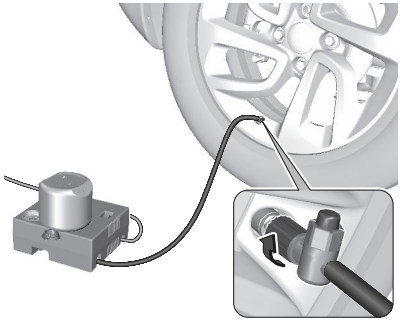


4. Open sealant bottle and lift the lid.



5. First, insert sealant bottle into the compressor and align the triangle symbols. Then, push down sealant bottle and turn it to the lock position.
6. Set the compressor near the tire in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.

7. Unscrew valve cap from defective tire.

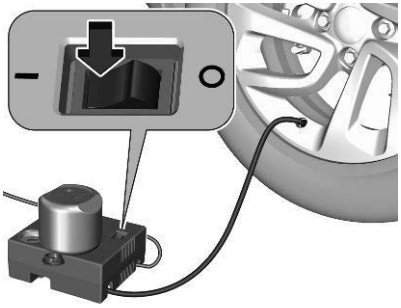


8. Screw the filler hose to the tire valve.
9. The switch on the compressor must be set to O
10. Connect the compressor plug to the 12 V power outlet or cigarette lighter socket .

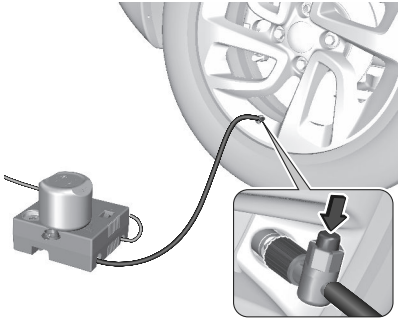
⚠ Warning

Only the 12 V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.

To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tire repair kit only when the combustion engine is running or when the electric engine is ready.



11. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to I. The tire is filled with sealant.
12. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 600 kPa (6 bar) whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds). Then the pressure starts to drop.
13. All of the sealant is pumped into the tire. Then the tire is being inflated.
14. The prescribed tire pressure should be obtained within 10 minutes.
    When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.
    If the prescribed tire pressure is not obtained within 10 minutes, remove the tire repair kit. Move the vehicle one tire rotation.
    Reattach the tire repair kit and continue the filling procedure for 10 minutes. If the prescribed tire pressure is still not obtained, the tire is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.



    Drain excess tire pressure with the button on the air hose.
    Do not run the compressor longer than 10 minutes.
15. Detach the tire repair kit. Remove sealant bottle from compressor. Screw the filler hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tire repair kit in load compartment.
16. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.
17. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tire. Drive between 20 km/h and 60 km/h (12 mph and 37 mph) .

After driving approx. 5 km (3 mi) but no more than 10 minutes, stop and check tire pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tire valve when doing this. Fill tire as described before. Drain excess tire pressure with the button on the air hose.
If tire pressure hasn't decreased under 200 kPa (2 bar), set it to the correct value. Otherwise the vehicle must not be used. Seek assistance of a workshop.
Repeat the checking procedure once more after driving further 10 km (6 mi) but no more than 10 minutes to check that there is no more loss of pressure.
If the tire pressure has fallen below 200 kPa (2 bar), the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

18. Stow away tire repair kit in load compartment.

Note
The driving characteristics of the repaired tire are severely affected, therefore have this tire replaced.
If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 min.
The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 700 kPa (7 bar).
Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.
Replace the used sealant bottle.
Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.
The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

⚠ Warning

Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tire under-inflation detection** , refer to the corresponding section.

Checking - Adjusting Tire Pressure

The compressor can be used, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tire pressures.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire and keep it in a clean place.
2. Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
3. Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
4. Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".
5. Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
6. Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
7. Switch the ignition on.
8. Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tire pressure label.
   To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

   ⚠ Warning

   If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tyre is damaged; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.
9. Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "O".
10. Remove the kit and stow it.
11. Refit the cap on the valve.

Jump starting

⚠ Warning

If the battery fails (after warranty coverage), replace it with a battery of the same specification as the one used in the vehicle.
All battery information can be found online at:
https://public-servicebox.opel.com/OVddb/OV/index.html

Lead-Acid Starter Batteries

Restriction
These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead). They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

⚠ Warning

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

⚠ Warning

Frozen battery

Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

⚠ Warning

Electronic control units/LED technology headlamps

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlamps.
Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlamps! Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

⚠ Warning

Automatic gearbox

Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Electric motor
Tip
Flat accessory battery

It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

⚠ Warning

Precautions before working on the accessory battery

Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

⚠ Warning

Jump-starting another vehicle

Do not use the accessory battery to jump-start another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

Symbols



No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.



Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.



Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.



The vehicle's battery contains sulphuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.



For more information, refer to the handbook.



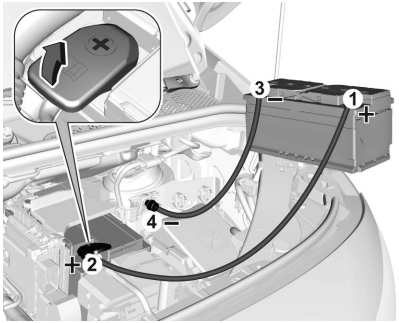
Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery

If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

⚠ Warning

Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.
Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery (**1**).
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (**2**).
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery (**3**).
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment (**4**).

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.
To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 s at an interval of 1 min.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.

4. Switch on electrical consumers e.g. headlights, heated rear window of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

⚠ Warning

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

⚠ Warning

To disconnect, proceed in reverse order.

12V Battery Charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
- If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ Warning

Caution

To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

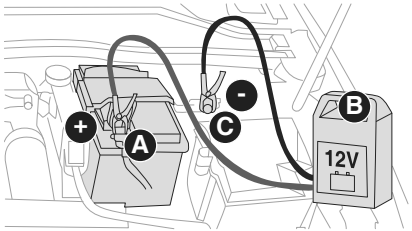
⚠ Warning

Caution

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

Tip
It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).

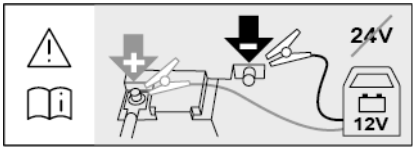


3. Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
4. Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
5. Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
6. Connect the cables of charger B as follows:
   • the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**.
   • the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
7. At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

⚠ Warning

Caution

If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



Disconnecting - Connecting Battery

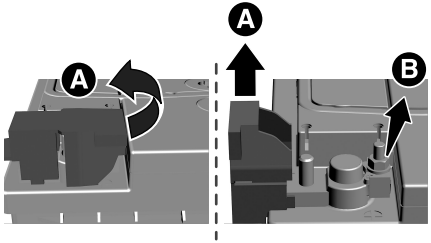
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.
Before disconnecting the 12 V battery:

1. Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
2. Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lights, etc.).
3. Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

After accessing the 12 V battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

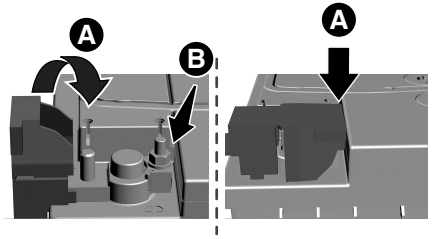
Quick-Release Battery Clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



1. Lift the plastic cover **A** on the **(+)** terminal.
2. Use a 10 mm wrench or socket to unscrew the nut **B** and detach the plastic cover.
3. Remove the plastic cover **A** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



1. Refit the plastic cover **A** on the **(+)** terminal.
2. Use a 10 mm wrench or socket to screw the nut **B** back.
3. Close the plastic cover **A** to cover the terminals.

After Being Recharged - Restarted

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop. Referring to

the relevant section, reinitialize some equipment:

- Electronic key.
- Sunroof.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

Tip
After reconnecting the battery, the message "**Collision risk detection system fault**" is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.

Refuelling In Emergency

⚠ Danger
Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers. Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger
Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks. If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed fuel types. In Europe, the pump nozzles of filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

Caution
In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler flap is located at left rear side of vehicle.



If the vehicle is equipped with an electronic key system, the fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Depending on the version, release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap or pulling at the right bottom corner.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

Depending on the version, place the key in the lock and unlock the cap.
To open, turn the cap slowly anticlockwise.



The fuel filler cap can be attached to the hook on the fuel filler flap.
Place the nozzle in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.
To refuel, switch on pump nozzle.
After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle a maximum of two more times.

Caution
Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks.
Close the flap and allow it to engage.

Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps.
Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

Maintenance and vehicle care

Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care 230
General information..... 230
Very Cold Climate Covers..... 230
End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal 230
Service information 231
Safety Tips..... 231
Vehicle storage 231
Scheduled servicing..... 233
Periodic checks 233
Cheking Fluids Level 233
Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts..... 235
Engine oil 235
Washer fluid 235
AdBlue® 236
Brake and clutch fluids 237
Antifreeze coolant 238
Engine compartment 238
Access to engine compartment 238
Engine 239
Checking Oil Level Engine 240
Adding Washer Fluid 240
Adding Coolant Fluid 240
Checking Brake Fluid 241
12V Battery 241
Vehicle maintenance 243
Wiper blade replacement 243
Refill AdBlue® (Exhaust Emission Fluid) 243
Air intake 245
Air Conditioner Maintenance 245
Service..... 245
Electrical system..... 245
Fuses 245
Lights replacement 245
Lights replacement..... 245
Front Lights 246
Foglights 248
Rear Lights..... 249
Interior lights 250
Integrated Turn Signal Side Repeaters..... 251
Number plate light..... 251
Tyres and wheels 251
Tyre safety information 251
Bodywork-exterior care 254
General Recommendations..... 254
High Gloss Paint..... 254
Decals..... 255
Interior care 255
General Recommendations..... 255
Plastic And Coated Parts..... 255
Instrument Cluster And Displays..... 255
Glass Surfaces..... 255
Seat Belts Maintenance..... 255
Leather Surfaces..... 255
Floor Materials..... 256
Fabric Parts..... 256

Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care

General Information

Very Cold Climate Covers

In order to prevent the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan, it is recommended to install removable protection covers.
The protection covers must be professionally installed, consult a workshop.

Caution
The cold protection covers must be removed when one of the following conditions occurs: ● The ambient temperature is above 10 °C. ● The vehicle is towing a trailer. ● The vehicle is driven at speeds above 120 km/h (75 mph).

End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of

end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.



High-voltage battery

The high voltage battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations are followed. If it becomes necessary to replace the high voltage battery, contact a workshop for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock and damage to the environment.

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals.
The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.
Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations in temperature.
Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in the service display. Contact a workshop for customized service schedules.

Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet.
The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.
Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly, as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Safety Tips

Vehicle Storage

Storage for a long period of time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill up fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.

1. Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
2. Do not apply the parking brake.

3. Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers.
4. Wait four minutes.
5. Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
6. Lift the plastic cover of the vehicle battery's positive terminal in the engine compartment.
7. Raise the lever fully and remove clamp from the terminal.

Storage for a long period of time (electric vehicle)

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

1. Wash and wax the vehicle.
2. Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
3. Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
4. Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
5. Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
6. Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
7. Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
8. Do not apply the parking brake.
9. Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

Up to four weeks

Plug in the charging cable.

Four weeks to twelve months

1. Discharge the high voltage battery until 30 percent remain on the battery range indicator (battery symbol) on the instrument cluster.
2. Do not plug in the charging cable.
3. Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10 °C and 30 °C.
4. Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high-voltage battery.
5. Remove the black negative (−) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals, or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (−) terminals in the engine compartment.
6. Every three months, check the battery's state of charge. If the state of charge is below 30 percent, recharge the battery to 30 percent.

Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

1. Connect the clamp to the positive terminal of the vehicle battery in the engine compartment.
2. Initialize the power windows.

- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

Putting back into operation (electric vehicle)

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Initialize the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant level.

- Fit the number plate if necessary.

Scheduled servicing

Periodic Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Only use products recommended by dealer or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, dealer selects and offers very specific products.

Cheking Fluids Level

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer.

⚠ Warning

The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

⚠ Warning

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

⚠ Warning

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Restriction

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil



The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, using the dip-stick.

To know how often the engine oil should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

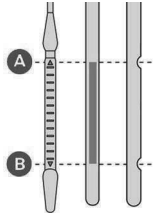
⚠ Warning

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

- Grasp the dipstick by its colored grip and pull it out completely.
- Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



- Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (max)** and **B (min)**.

Do not start the engine if the level is:

- above mark **A**: contact a dealer.
- below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

⚠ Warning

Oil grade

Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your dealer or qualified workshop).
Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

1. Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
2. Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
3. Top up the level if necessary.
4. After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

Tip
Within 30 minutes of adding oil, the oil level indication in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid.

Brake fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the **"MAX"** mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

⚠ Warning

Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant

(ICE)

It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.
The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low level presents a risk of serious damage to the engine.
The level of engine coolant should be close to the "**MAX**" mark but should never exceed it.
If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top up.
When the engine is hot, the temperature of engine coolant is regulated by the fan.
As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
In order to avoid the risk of burning, if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

BEV

⚠ Warning

Caution



Do not top up the coolant.



If the level is close to or below the **"MIN"** mark, it is essential to contact a dealer.

Screenwash fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

⚠ Warning

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

⚠ Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine Oil

Engine oil and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The engine oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and engine oil ageing control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the engine oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Use the appropriate engine oil given on the service schedule sheet handed over by the selling dealer.

Topping up engine oil

Caution

In case of any spilled oil, wipe it up and dispose of it properly.

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the engine oil.
Multi-grade engine oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Washer Fluid

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper

blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

AdBlue®

General information

The selective catalytic reduction (BlueHDi) is a method to substantially reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission. This is achieved by injecting a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system. The ammonia released by the fluid reacts with nitrous gases (NOx) from the exhaust and turns it into nitrogen and water.
The designation of this fluid is AdBlue®. It is a non-toxic, nonflammable, colorless and odourless fluid which consists of 32% urea and 68% water.

⚠ Warning

Avoid contact of your eyes or skin with AdBlue®.
In case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

Caution

Avoid contact of the paintwork with AdBlue®.
In case of contact, rinse off with water.

⚠ Warning

Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

⚠ Warning

In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:
– Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
– Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cutout, if you are refilling at a service station.
The system only registers AdBlue® intermediate top-ups of 5 litres or more.

⚠ Warning

If the AdBlue ® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "**Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible**" – it is essential to add at least 10 litres.
Top-up detection may not be instantaneous after addition. It may take a few minutes of driving before the top-up detection is effective.

AdBlue® freezes at a temperature of approx. -11 °C. As the vehicle is equipped with an AdBlue® preheater, the emissions reduction at low temperatures is ensured. The AdBlue® preheater works automatically.
In some circumstances below the mentioned temperature, an error message appears in the Driver Information Centre. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue® is liquefied.
Note
Frozen and again liquefied AdBlue® is usable without quality loss.
The typical AdBlue® consumption is approx. 2 l per 1000 km, but can also be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing).

Level warnings

Depending on the calculated range of AdBlue®, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

1. The first possible warning is **Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 2400 km (1500 mi)**. When switching on the ignition, this warning will show up once briefly with the calculated range. Additionally, control indicator will illuminate and

a chime will sound. Driving is possible without any restrictions.

2. The next warning level is entered with a range below 800 km (500 mi). The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on. Additionally, control indicator will illuminate and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue® before entering the next warning level. When driving, the chime sounds and the message is displayed every 100 km (60 mi) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
3. The next warning level is entered with a range below 100 km (60 mi). The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on. Additionally, control indicator will flash and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue® as soon as possible before the AdBlue® tank is completely empty. Otherwise, a restart of the engine will not be possible. When driving, the chime sounds and the message is displayed every 10 km (6 mi) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
4. The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue® tank is empty. Restart of the engine is not possible. The following warning message will be displayed: **Top up emissions additive**:
Starting prevented Additionally, control indicator u will flash and a chime will sound.
Refill the tank to a level of at least 5 l of AdBlue®, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible.

High emission warnings

In the event of a fault with the emissions control system, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

1. If a fault is detected for the first time, the warning **Emissions fault** is displayed. Additionally, control indicators , and will illuminate and a chime will sound. Driving is possible without any restrictions. If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the emissions control system.
2. If the fault is confirmed by the emission control system, the following message will be displayed:**Emissions fault:Starting prevented in 1100 km (690 mi)**. Additionally, control indicators , and will illuminate and a chime will sound. When driving, the message is displayed every 30 s while the fault persists.
3. If the last warning level is entered, the following warning message will be displayed:
Emissions fault: Starting prevented
Additionally, control indicators , and
will illuminate and a chime will sound.
Consult a workshop for assistance.

⚠ Warning

Important: **in the event of a top-up after an AdBlue** breakdown, you must wait about 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle or bringing the electronic key into the passenger compartment**.
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Brake And Clutch Fluids

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture, which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

Antifreeze Coolant

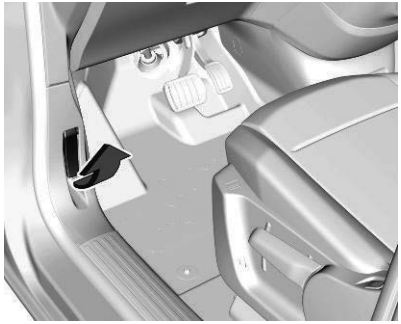
Use only antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.
The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -37 °C.
This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

Engine compartment

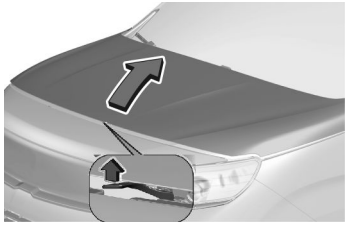
Access To Engine Compartment

Opening

1. Open the left front door.



2. Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.



3. Push the safety catch upwards and open the bonnet.



4. Secure the bonnet support.

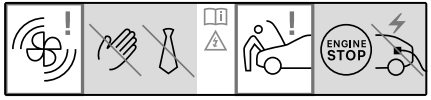
Closing

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder.
Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm).
Check that the bonnet is engaged.

Caution
Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents

⚠ Warning
Electric vehicles Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving

components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!
Before carrying out any work under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition, check that the READY indicator lamp is off on the instrument panel and disconnect the nozzle from the charging connector if it is connected.



⚠ Warning

Stop & Start

Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!



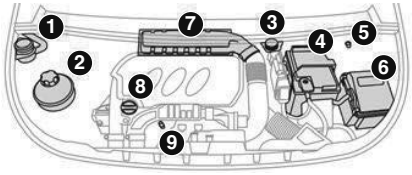
Engine

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.
The locations of the following components may vary:

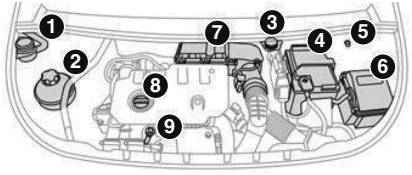
- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.

ICE

Petrol

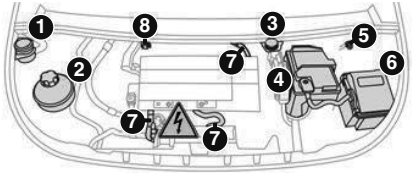


Diesel



1 Screenwash fluid reservoir
2 Engine coolant reservoir
3 Brake fluid reservoir
4 Battery/Fuses
5 Remote earth point (-)
6 Fusebox
7 Air filter
8 Engine oil filler cap
9 Engine oil dipstick

BEV



1 Screenwash fluid reservoir
2 Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3 Brake fluid reservoir
4 Battery/Fuses
5 Fusebox
6 400 V electrical circuit
7 Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians

For more information on the Charging system (Electric), refer to the corresponding section.

Checking Oil Level Engine

The state of the engine oil level is displayed in the cluster for a few seconds following the service information after switching on the ignition.
A proper state of engine oil level is indicated by a message.If the engine oil level is low, the two indicators flash and a message is indicated.
Confirm the engine oil level by using the dipstick and top up engine oil respectively.
A fault of measurement is indicated by a message.
Check the engine oil level manually by using the dipstick.

Adding Washer Fluid



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid that contains antifreeze.
The washer fluid level has to be underneath the **MAX** mark.

Caution
Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

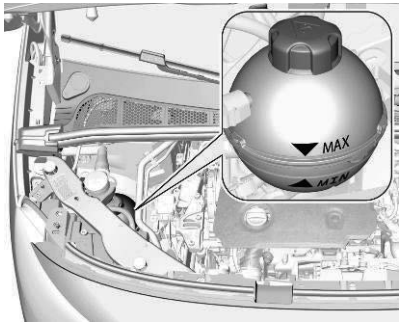
Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed windshield washer fluid, available through the dealer network.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

Caution
Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.). The use of vinegar or any other non-dedicated product will cause irreversible damage to the windshield washer system.

Adding Coolant Fluid

Coolant level BEV



If the coolant level is at the **MIN** mark or below, seek the assistance of a workshop to have the engine coolant topped up.

Caution
Using the wrong engine coolant can cause severe damage to the high-voltage battery. Only experienced mechanics are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and top up coolant.

Coolant level ICE

The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37 °C.

Caution
Only use approved antifreeze.

Caution
Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.

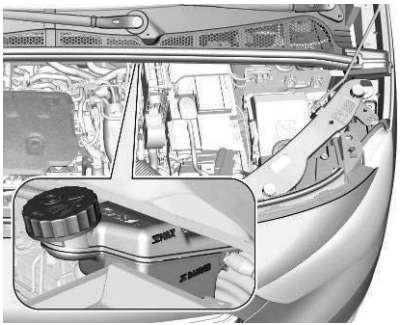
If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. Top up if the level is low.

⚠ Warning
Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water.
Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Checking Brake Fluid

⚠ Warning
Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.



The brake fluid level must be between the **DANGER** and **MAX** marks.
If fluid level is below **DANGER**, seek the assistance of a workshop.

12V Battery

The vehicle battery is maintenance free provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.
Not using the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge.
Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.
Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Replacing the vehicle battery

Note
Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the Stop & Start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.
Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.
The vehicle battery must be replaced by a workshop.
All battery information can be found online at
https://public-servicebox.opel.com/OVddb/OV/index.html

Charging the vehicle battery

⚠ Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 V when using a battery charger.
Otherwise the vehicle battery may be damaged.

Discharge protection

Battery voltage

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, e.g. the heated rear window.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Idle boost
If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost that may be audible.
A message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Power outlet
The power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Warning label



Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

Power saving mode
This mode deactivates electrical consumers to avoid excessive discharging of the vehicle battery. These consumers, such as the infotainment system, windscreen wipers, low beam headlights, courtesy light, etc.

can be used for a total maximum time of about 40 minutes after ignition is switched off.

Changing into power saving mode

When power saving mode is activated, a message appears in the Driver Information Centre indicating **Power saving mode.**

An active telephone call using the hands-free option will be maintained for around 10 minutes longer.

Deactivating power saving mode

Power saving mode is deactivated automatically when the engine is restarted. Run the engine for a sufficient charge:

- for less than 10 minutes to use the consumers for approx. five minutes
- for more than 10 minutes to use the consumers for up to approx. 30 minutes

Heating functionalities

Note

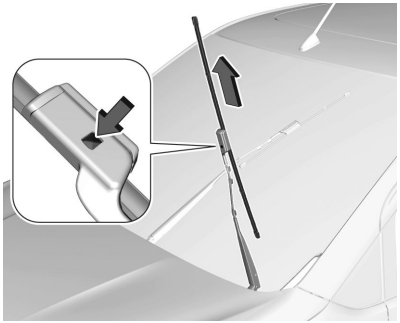
Individual heating functionalities, such as heated seats or heated steering wheel, may be temporarily unavailable in the event of electrical loading constraints. Functions will be resumed after some minutes.

Vehicle maintenance

Wiper Blade Replacement

Caution
Never attempt to move the wipers manually. This can cause permanent damage to the mechanism.

Windscreen



Switch off the ignition.

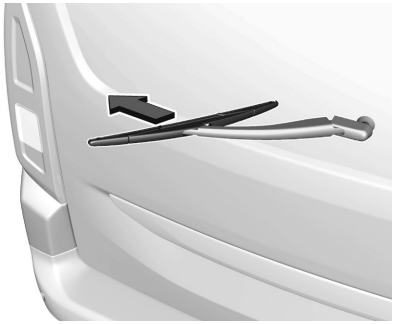
Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper lever to positon the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.

Attach the wiper blade to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Rear window



Lift the wiper arm. Disengage the wiper blade as shown in the illustration and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Refill AdBlue® (Exhaust Emission Fluid)

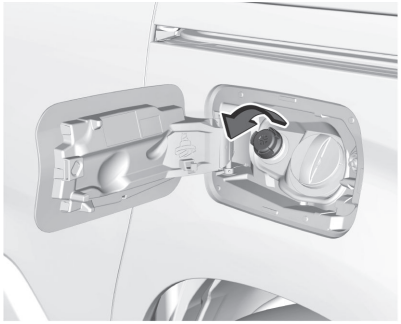
Caution
Only use AdBlue that complies with European standards DIN 70 070 and ISO 22241-1. Do not use additives. Do not dilute AdBlue. Otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

Note
Whenever a filling pump with a nozzle for passenger cars is not available at a filling station, use only AdBlue® bottles or canisters with a sealed refill adapter for refilling, to prevent splashback and overspill, and in order to ensure that the fumes from the tank are captured and do not emerge. AdBlue® in bottles or canisters is available in many filling stations and can be purchased e.g.at dealers and other retail outlets.
Since AdBlue® has a limited durability, check the date of expiry before refilling.
Note
Refill the AdBlue® tank to a level of at least 10 l, to ensure that the new AdBlue® level is being detected.
In case AdBlue® refill is not successfully detected:

1. Continuously drive the vehicle for 10 minutes making sure that vehicle speed is always higher than 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. If AdBlue® refill is detected successfully, AdBlue® supplydriven warnings or limitations will disappear.

If AdBlue® refill is still not detected, seek the assistance of a workshop.
If AdBlue® must be refilled at temperatures below -11 °C, the refilling of AdBlue® may not be detected by the system. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue® is liquified.
Note
When unscrewing the protective cap from the filler neck, ammonia fumes may emerge. Do not inhale as the fumes have a pungent smell. The fumes are not harmful by inhalation.
The AdBlue® tank should be filled completely. This must be done if the warning message regarding prevention of an engine restart is already displayed.
The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.
The filler neck for AdBlue® is located behind the fuel filler flap, which is located at left rear side of the vehicle.
If the vehicle is equipped with an electronic key system, the fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked.

1. Remove key from ignition switch.
2. Close all doors to avoid ammonia fumes entering the interior of the vehicle.
3. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap.

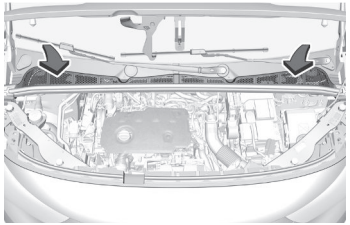


4. Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.
5. Open AdBlue® canister.
6. Mount one end of the hose on the canister and screw the other end on the filler neck.
7. Lift the canister until it is empty, or until the flow from the canister has stopped. This can take up to five minutes.
8. Place the canister on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 s.
9. Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.
10. Mount the protective cap and turn clockwise until it engages.

Note
Dispose of AdBlue® canister according to environmental requirements. Hose can

be reused after flushing with clear water before AdBlue® dries out.

Air Intake



The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Air Conditioner Maintenance

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:

- functionality and pressure test
- heating functionality
- leakage check
- check of drive belts
- cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- performance check

Electrical system

Fuses

⚠ Warning

Changing a fuse

All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.
The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

Installing electrical accessories

The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ Warning

The Manufacturer accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not approved by it and not installed in accordance with its specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Lights replacement

Lights Replacement

Before replacing a bulb, ensure that all exterior and interior lights and the ignition are switched off. All doors have to be closed.
Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.
Use only the same bulb type for replacement.
Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

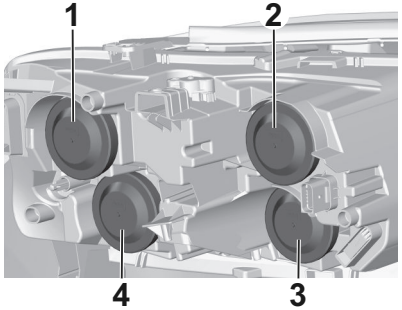
Bulb check

After a bulb replacement, switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

Front Lights

Halogen headlights

Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam, high beam, front turn light and daytime running light.



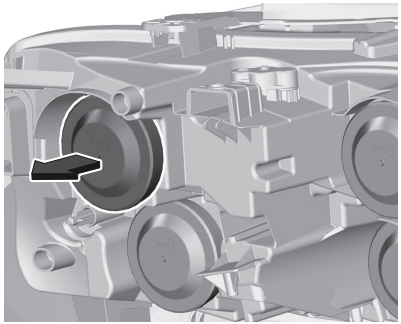
1 Low beam

2 High beam

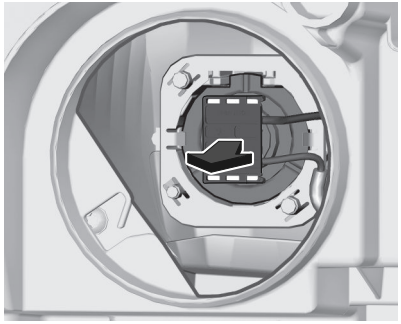
3 Front turn light

4 Sidelight/daytime running light

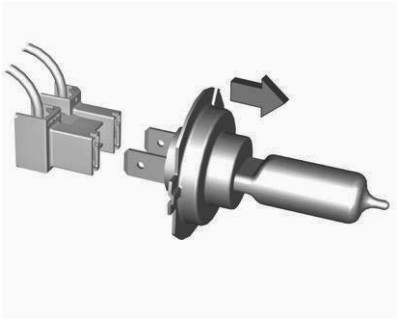
Low beam (1)



1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.

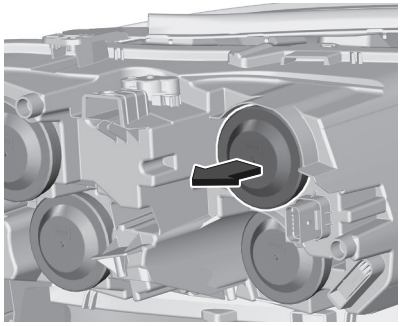


2. Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.

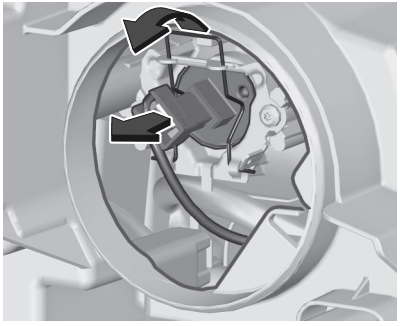


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Fit the protective cover on.

High beam (2)

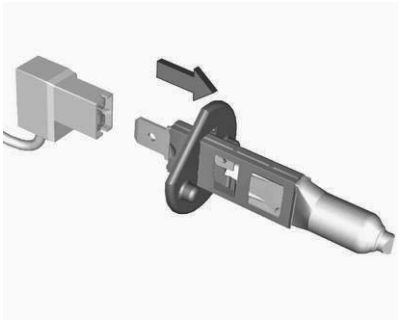


1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.



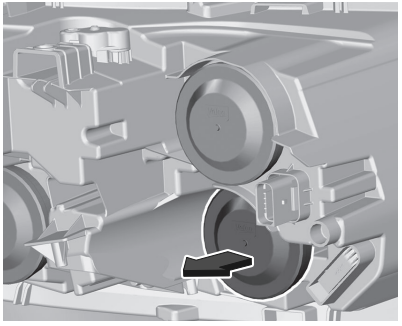
2. Disengage the spring clip from the retainer by moving it to the right-hand side. Swivel the spring clip downwards.

   Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.

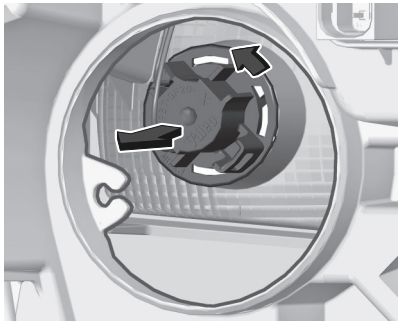


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Fit the protective cover on.

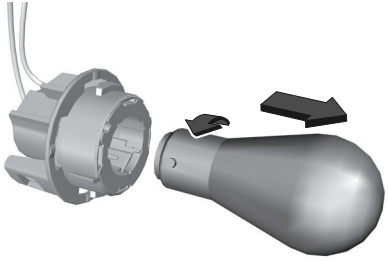
Front turn light (3)



1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.



2. Rotate the bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage and withdraw from the reflector.

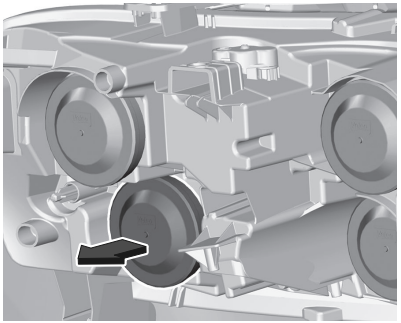


3. Rotate the lower bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage and detach the bulb.

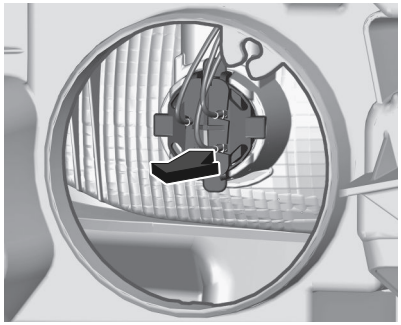
4. Replace and insert the new bulb into the bulb socket.
5. Insert the bulb socket into reflector housing and turn clockwise.
6. Fit the protective cover on.

Sidelight / daytime running light with bulbs (4)

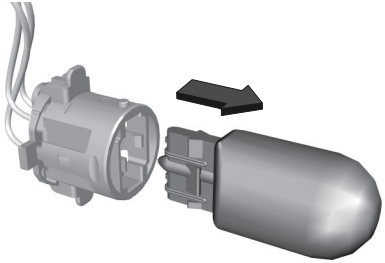
Tip
Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.



1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.



2. Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.



3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Fit the protective cover on.

LED headlights

Tip
Daytime running lights are designed as LEDs and can not be changed.
Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

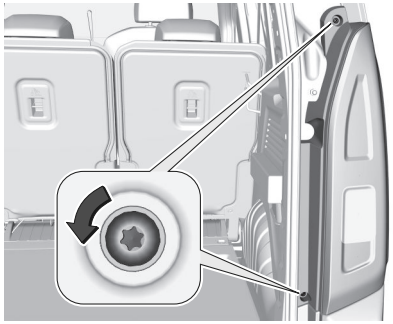
Foglights

Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

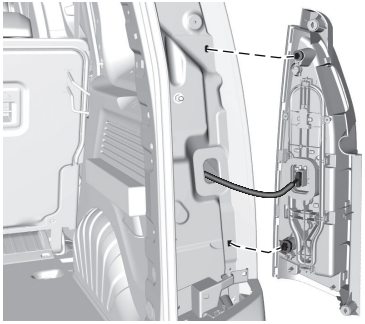
Rear Lights

Light assembly in the body

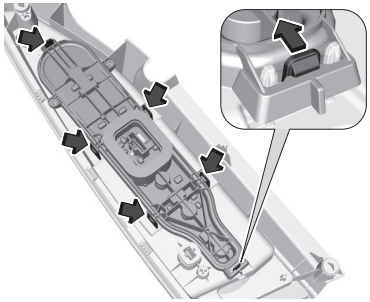
Vehicle with tailgate



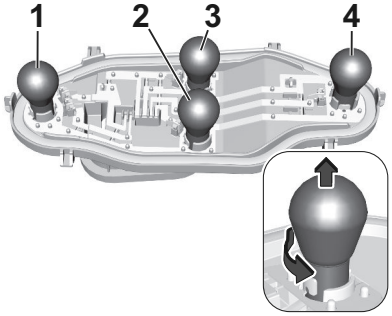
1. Unscrew and remove the two screws.



2. Carefully withdraw the tail light assembly from recess and remove.
   Take care that the cable duct remains in position.
3. Detdetach the cable from the retainer.

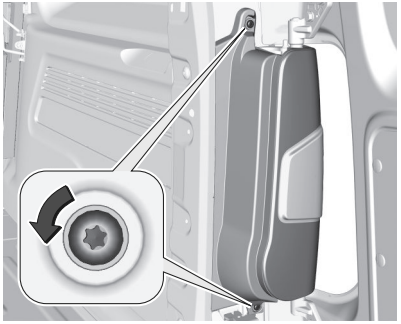


4. Press the retaining lug backwards, pull the bulb carrier and disengage the remaining retaining lugs.

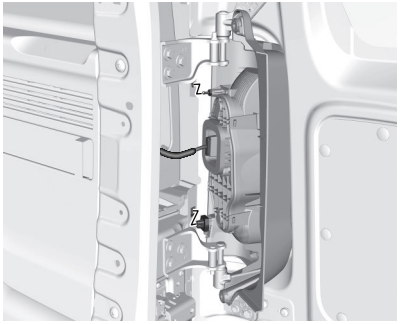


5. Push the bulb slightly down, turn it and remove it from the bulb carrier.
   Replace the bulb: Rear fog light (**1**)
   Reversing light (**2**)
   Turn light / hazard warning flasher (**3**)
   Tail light / brake light (**4**)
6. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.
7. Attach the cable to the retainer.
8. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten both screws.

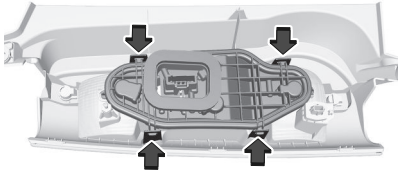
Vehicle with rear doors



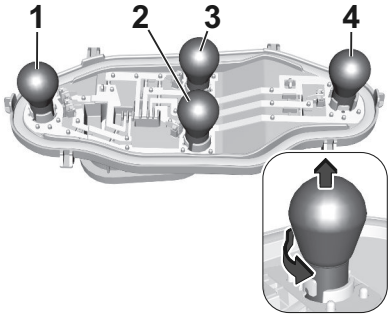
1. Unscrew and remove the two screws.



2. Carefully withdraw the tail light assembly from recess and remove. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.
3. Detach the cable from the retainer.



4. Disengage the retaining lugs to remove the bulb carrier.



5. Push the bulb slightly down, turn it and remove it from the bulb carrier.
   Replace the bulb: Rear fog light (**1**)
   Reversing light (**2**)
   Turn light / hazard warning flasher (**3**)
   Tail light / brake light (**4**)
6. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.
7. Attach the cable to the retainer.
8. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten both screws.

3rd-brake light

The 3rd-brake light is designed as LED and can not be changed.
Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

Bulb check

Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lights.

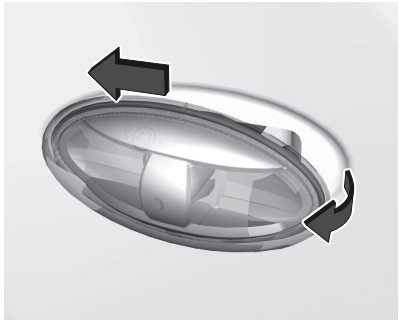
Interior Lights

Have the following bulbs replaced by a workshop:

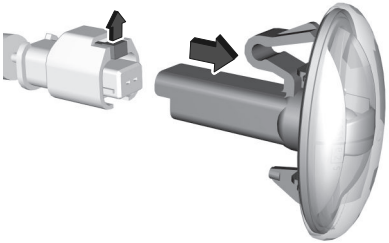
- courtesy light, reading lights
- load compartment light
- instrument panel illumination

Integrated Turn Signal Side Repeaters

To replace the bulb, remove the lamp housing:



1. Slide the lamp housing forward and remove it at the back.



2. Press the retaining lug upwards and remove the bulb socket from the plug connector.
3. Replace the complete unit.
4. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

Number Plate Light



1.
2. Insert a screwdriver in the recess of the cover and remove it.



3. Pull the bulb from the bulb holder and replace it.

Tyres and wheels

Tyre Safety Information

Tyre condition, wheel condition

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.
Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

Winter tyres

Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view, if the tyre speed code is below the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Tire pressure

Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel. This also applies to vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system.
Tyre pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tyre pressure value, follow the procedure below:

- Depending on the vehicle variant identify the payload.
- Identify the respective tyre.

The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations.
For the tyres approved for your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

⚠ Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

⚠ Warning

For specific tires the recommended tyre pressure as shown in the tyre pressure table may exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tyre. Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre.

Temperature dependency

The tyre pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. During driving, tire temperature and pressure increase. tire pressure values provided on the tire information label and tire pressure chart are valid for cold tires, which means at 20 °C.
The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tyres are checked.

Tread depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals. For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.
If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.
Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tire replacement every six years.

Wheel covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and

tyre combination requirements must be used.
If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge.
Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

⚠ Warning

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheels: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.

Tyre deflation detection system

The tyre deflation detection system continually checks the rotation speed of all four wheels and warns on low tyre pressure condition once vehicle is driving. This is achieved by comparing tyre rolling circumference with reference values and further signals.
If a tire loses pressure the control indicator (!) illuminates, a warning chime is given and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
In this case reduce speed, avoid sharp cornering and strong braking.
Stop at next safe opportunity and check tyre pressure.
After adjusting tyre pressure initialise system to extinguish the control indicator and restart system.

Caution

Deflation detection system warns just about low tyre pressure condition and does not replace regular tyre maintenance by the driver.

In case of a system malfunction a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Set correct tire pressure and reinitialise system. If the failure continues to be displayed, contact a workshop. The system is inoperable when ABS or ESC has a malfunction or a temporary spare wheel is used. Once the road tire has been refitted, check the tire pressure with cold tires and initialise the system.

System initialisation

After tyre pressure correction or wheel change, the system must be initialised to learn new circumference reference values:

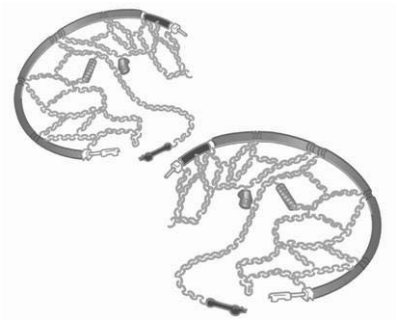
1. Always ensure that all four tyres have correct tyre pressure
2. Apply parking brake.
3. Depending on version, start the initialisation procedure: Initialise the deflation detection system in the Info Display.
   Initialise the deflation detection system in the vehicle personalisation .
4. Reset is confirmed by pop-up indication.

After initialisation system automatically calibrates to new tyre pressures during driving. After longer driving the system will adopt and monitor new pressures. Always check tyre pressure with cold tyres.
System has to be reinitialised when:

- tyre pressure has been changed
- Load condition has been changed
- Wheels have been swapped or exchanged

The system will not warn instantaneously on a tyre blow out or a rapid deflation. This is due to required calculation time.

Tyre chains



Tyre chains are only permitted on the front wheels.
Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 9 mm to the tire tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

⚠ Warning
Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

Tire chains are permitted on all tires sizes allowed for the vehicle.

Temporary spare wheel

⚠ Warning
The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

Bodywork-exterior care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

⚠ Warning
Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components! Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

Tip
When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away.
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

High Gloss Paint

⚠ Warning
Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork. Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork! Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

Tip
Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

⚠ Warning

Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

Tip
Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Interior care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!

To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Plastic And Coated Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary.
Do not use any other agent.
Avoid solvents and petrol in particular.
Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

Instrument Cluster And Displays

The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.

Glass Surfaces

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner to clean the glass panel.

Seat Belts Maintenance

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.
The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

Leather Surfaces

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability. It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

⚠ Warning

Do not use maintenance products which are not suitable for cleaning leather (e.g. solvent, detergent, petrol, pure alcohol).
Do not use bleaching or colour-removal products (e.g. perchloroethylene).
When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

Tip
Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.

Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has
been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.
Clean the leather, without rubbing too vigorously, using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product. Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

Floor Materials

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat has the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with pedals, potentially causing unintended acceleration or increased stopping distance that may result in collision and injury.

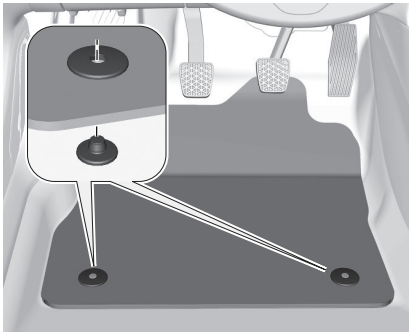
Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

1. The original equipment floor mats were designed for this vehicle. If the floor mats need to be replaced, it is recommended to buy certified floor mats that fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
2. Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
3. Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
4. Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.

Inserting and removing the floor mats

The driver side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.
To install the floor mat:

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.



2. Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.
3. Push the mat to the floor.

Removing

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Remove the mat.

Fabric Parts

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.
Clothing fabrics may not be colour-fast. This could cause visible discolourations, especially on light-coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolourations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

Technical specifications

Vehicle identification..... 257
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 257
License plate 258
Engine identification 258
Tyre information label 258
Vehicle data 259
Engine data 260
Fluid capacities 276
Engine oil 276
Fuel tank 276
AdBlue® tank 276
Compatibility of Wheels And Tires ... 277
Tightening torques 277

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating tothe vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres.
The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

⚠ Warning

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

⚠ Warning

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.

Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

⚠ Warning

For Hybrid (MHEV) models in high altitude conditions (> 2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

Vehicle identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



The Vehicle Identification Number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen.

License Plate



The identification plate is located on the front left or right door frame. The layout and position differ for some export countries.
Information on identification label:

1 manufacturer

2 type approval number

3 vehicle identification number

4 permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg

5 permissible gross train weight in kg

6 maximum permissible front axle load in kg

7 maximum permissible rear axle load in kg

8 manufacturer address, vehicle specific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight.
Vehicle's kerb weight depends on the specification of the vehicle, e.g. optional equipment and accessories.
Refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications.
Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

Engine Identification

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code.
To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

Tyre Information Label



The tire pressure information label on the left door frame indicates the original equipment tires and the correspondent tire pressures.
The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.
Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.
Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

Size	L1	L2
Passenger car **Length [mm]**	**4410**	**4760**
Commercial car Length [mm]	4401	4751
Width without exterior mirrors [mm]	1848	1848
Width with exterior mirrors [mm]	2107	2107
Passenger car Height without roof railing [mm]	1775	1787
Passenger car Height with roof railing [mm]	1812	1818
Commercial car Height without worksite pack	1796-1825	1812-1820
Commercial car Height with worksite pack	1840-1860	1849-1860
Wheelbase [mm]	2785	2975
Turning circle diameter [m]	–[3)]	–[3)]

[3)] Not available at time of printing.

Engine Data

Engine identifier code	D12XHL F12XHL	F12XHT	F15DT	D15DTH
Sales designation	1.2 Turbo	1.2	1.5 Turbo	1.5 Turbo
Engineering code	EB2ADT	EB2ADTS	DV5RCf	DV5RC
Piston displacement [cm^3]	1199	1199	1499	1499
Engine power [kW] at rpm	81 5500	96 5500	75 3750	96 3750
Torque [Nm] at rpm	205 1750	230 1750	240 1750	300 1750
Fuel type	Petrol	Petrol	Diesel	Diesel
Octane rating RON [1)2)] recommended possible	95 98	95 -		

1) A country specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the engine specific requirement.
2) In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.

Engine identifier code	A16DT	Electric vehicle
Sales designation	1.6 Turbo	-
Engineering code	DV6DR DV6DRM	-
Piston displacement [cm^3]	1560	-
Engine power [kW] at rpm	68 4000	100 -

Engine identifier code	A16DT	Electric vehicle
Sales designation	1.6 Turbo	-
Engineering code	DV6DR DV6DRM	-
Torque [Nm] at rpm	230 1750	270 -
Fuel type	Diesel	-

Engines and towed loads - PETROL EURO 6.3-6.4



Engine			PureTech 110 S&S BVM6 6.4		PureTech 130 S&S EAT8 6.3	
Gearbox			Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code			EB2ADT MB6 STTD		EB2ADTS ATN8 STTD	
Leight			M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	5 seats		EGHNP2	EGHNP2	EGHNP3	EGHNP3
	7 seats		EGHNP2	EGHNP2	EGHNP3	EGHNP3
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,199		1,199	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			81		96	
Fuel			Unleaded		Unleaded	

Engine		PureTech 110 S&S BVM6 6.4		PureTech 130 S&S EAT8 6.3	
Gearbox		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code		EB2ADT MB6 STTD		EB2ADTS ATN8 STTD	
Leight		M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats	1,150	1,100	1,200	1,150
	7 seats	-	950	1,050	1,000
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats	720	750	740	750
	7 seats	-	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose/tow-ball weight (kg)	5 seats	74	74	74	74
	7 seats	-	50	70/50	50





	PURETECH 110 S&S BVM6 EB2ADT STTD MB6E 6. 3-6.4		PURETECH 130 S&S BVM6 EB2ADTS STTD ATN8 6.3*		PURETECH 110 S&S BVM6 EB2LTE STTD MB6 6ebis
	MPV (650kg)	MPV (1000kg)	MPV (650kg)	MPV (1000kg)	MPV
Code	EHHNP2	EHHNP2	EHHNS2	EHHNS2	EHHPJ
Cubic	1199	1199	1199	1199	1199
Max power	81	81	81	81	81

					
	PURETECH 110 S&S BVM6 EB2ADT STTD MB6E 6. 3-6.4		**PURETECH 130 S&S BVM6 EB2ADTS STTD ATN8 6.3***		**PURETECH 110 S&S BVM6 EB2LTE STTD MB6 6ebis**
	MPV (650kg)	**MPV (1000kg)**	**MPV (650kg)**	**MPV (1000kg)**	**MPV**
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	1200	900	1300	900	NA
Unbraked trailer kg	2 seats: 700/715 3 seats : 690	2 seats : 690/710	2 seats: 720/740	2 seats: 720/740	NA
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight kg	74	74	74	74	NA

*Australia €6.3
NA : Not Available

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL



Engine			HDi 92 S&S BVM5	
Gearbox			Manual 5-speed	
Code			DV6DR	
Leight			M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	5 seats		€5 = EB9HPA €4 = EB9HPD	€5 = EB9HPA €4 = EB9HPD
	7 seats		€5 = EB9HPA €4 = EB9HPD	€5 = EB9HPA €4 = EB9HPD
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,560	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			68	
Fuel			Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats		600	600
	7 seats		-	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats		600	600
	7 seats		-	600
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	5 seats		74	74
	7 seats		-	74

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL EURO 6.3-6.4



Engine	BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8
Gearbox	Automatic 8-speed
Code	DV5RC STTd ATN8
Model Code	EDYHZ3
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96
Fuel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	1000/1300
Unbraked trailer (kg)	720/730
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	52



Engine			BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8 €6.4	
Gearbox			Automatic 8-speed	
Code			DV5RC STTd ATN8	
Length			M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	5 seats		EBYHZ3	EBYHZ3
	7 seats		EBYHZ3	EBYHZ3
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			96	
Fuel			Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats		1,300	1,225/1,250
	7 seats		1,100/1,150	1,050/1,100
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats		750	750
	7 seats		-	750
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	5 seats		52	74
	7 seats		-	50

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL EURO 6.3, 6.4, 6.ebis



Engine	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6	BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8 6.4
Gearbox	Manual 6-speed	Automatic 8-speed
Code	DV5RCf MB6 STTD	DV5RC STTd ATN8
Model Code	€6.3 = EDYHT2 €6.4 = EDYHT	€6.3 = EDYHZ3 €6.4 = EDYHZ3
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499	1,499
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	75	96
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	1000/1350/1350**	1000/1350**
Unbraked trailer (kg)	720/710/730**	720/730/740**
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	74	74

** 3 seats



Engine			BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox			Manual 6-speed		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code			DV5RCf MB6 STTD		DV5RC MB6 STTD		DV5RC ATN8 STTD	
Length			M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	5 seats		6.3 = EBYHT2 6.4 = EBYHT2 6ebis = YHP	6.3 = EBYHT2 6.4 = EBYHT2 6ebis = YHP	6.3 = EBYHZ2 6.4 = EBYHP	6.3 = EBYHZ2 6.4 = EBYHP	6.3 = EBYHZ3 6.4 = EBYHZ 6.3 = EBYHZ3 6.4 = EBYHZ	6.3 = EBYHZ3 6.4 = EBYHZ
	7 seats		6.3 = EBYHT2 6.4 = EBYHT2 6ebis = YHP	6.3 = EBYHT2 6.4 = EBYHT2 6ebis = YHP	6.3 = EBYHZ2 6.4 = EBYHP	6.3 = EBYHZ2 6.4 = EBYHP	6.3 = EBYHZ3 6.4 = EBYHZ	6.3 = EBYHZ3 6.4 = EBYHZ
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,499		1,499		1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			75		96		96	
Fuel			Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	

Engine		BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox		Manual 6-speed		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code		DV5RCf MB6 STTD		DV5RC MB6 STTD		DV5RC ATN8 STTD	
Length		M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats	1,300	1,250	1,300	1,250	1,300	1,250
	7 seats	-	1,100	1,350	1,100	-	1,100
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats	720	750	-	750	750	750
	7 seats	-	750	750	750	-	750
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	5 seats	74	74	74	74	52	74
	7 seats	74	74	55/60	74	-	50

						
Engine	**HDi 90 BVM5 DV6DRM BE4L €4**		**HDi 90 BVM5 DV6DRM BE4L €4**		**HDi 90 BVM5 DV6DRM BE4L €4**	
Lenght	**VP (L1)**		**VP (L2)**		**MPV**	
Model Code	EB9HPD		EB9HPD		ED9HPD	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,587		1,587		1,587	
Max power EC standard (kW)	68		68		68	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	**5 seats**	600	**5 seats**	600	**2 seats**	600
	7 seats	600	**7 seats**	600	**3 seats**	600
Unbraked trailer kg	**5 seats**	600	**5 seats**	600	**2 seats**	600
	7 seats	600	**7 seats**	600	**3 seats**	600
Maximum authorised nose/tow-ball weight kg	74		74		74	

			
Engine	**BlueHDi 100 S&S DV5RCf MB6 STTD**	**BlueHDi 100 S&S DV5RCf MB6 STTD**	**BlueHDi 100 S&S DV5RCf MB6 STTD 6ebis**
Lenght	**MPV (L1)**	**MPV (L2)**	**MPV (cab Appro)**
Model Code	EDYHT	EDYHT	EDYHT2
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499	1,499	1,499
Max power EC standard (kW)	75	75	75
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	L1 650 = 1,350 L1 800 = 1,000 L1 1,000 = 1,000	L2 800 = 1,200 L2 1000 = 1,050	L1 = 1,030 L2 800 = 1,070 L2 850 = 1,030
Unbraked trailer kg	L1 650 = 710 L1 800 = 720 L1 1000 = 720	L2 800 = 740 L2 1000 = 740	L1 = 750 L2 800 = 750 L2 850 = 750
Maximum authorised nose/tow-ball weight kg	74	74	74

				
Engine	**HDi 90 BVM5 DV6DR BE4L €5**	**HDi 90 BVM5 DV6DR BE4L €5**		**HDi 90 BVM5 DV6DR BE4L €5**
Lenght	**VP (L1)**	**VP (L2)**		**MPV**
Model Code	EB9HPA	EB9HPA		ED9HPA
Cubic capacity (cc)	1560	1560		1560
Max power EC standard (kW)	68	68		68
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	**5 seats** 600	**5 seats**	600	**2 seats** 600
		7 seats	600	**3 seats** 600
Unbraked trailer kg	**5 seats** 600	**5 seats**	600	**2 seats** 600
		7 seats	600	**3 seats** 600
Maximum authorised nose/tow-ball weight kg	74	74		74

			
Engine	**BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8 DV5RC ATN8 STTD €6.4**	**BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6 DV5RC MB6 STTD €6.ebis**	**BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8 DV5RC ATN8 STTD €6.ebis**
	VP	**VP**	**VP**
Model Code		EBYHP2	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1499	1,499	1,499
Max power EC standard (kW)	96	96	96
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	L1 5pl = 1,300 L2 5pl = 1,250 L2 7pl = 1,100	L1 5pl = 1300 L2 5pl = 1250 L2 7pl = 1,100	L1 5pl = 1,300 L2 5pl = 1,250 L2 7pl = 1,100
Unbraked trailer kg	L1 5pl = 720 L2 5pl = 750 L2 7pl = 750	L1 5pl = 720 L2 5pl = 750 L2 7pl = 750	L1 5pl = 720 L2 5pl = 750 L2 7pl = 750
Maximum authorised nose/tow-ball weight kg	74	74	74

Motor and towed loads - Electric

Electric motor	
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power : EC standard (kW)/(hp)	100/136
Traction battery	
Technology	Lithium-Ion
Battery pack	18 modules
Installed capacity (kWh)	50
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A	230 8 or 16
Accelerated charging	**Mode 3**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32
Superfast charging	Mode 4
Direct current (DC) voltage	400
Towed loads	
Model codes:	**ZKX / ZKUZ / ZKLZ**
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power : EC standard (kW)/(hp)	750

Model codes:	ZKX / ZKUZ / ZKLZ
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	50

Fluid capacities

Engine Oil

Engine	DV5RC DV5RCf	EB2ADT EB2ADTS	DV6DR DV6DRM
including filter [l]	3.95[4)] 5.3[5)]	3.5	3.75
between MIN and MAX [l]	1	1	

4) Personal car
5) Commercial car

Fuel Tank

Petrol / diesel, refilling quantity [l]	60 / 53

AdBlue® Tank

AdBlue®, refilling quantity [l]	17

Compatibility of Wheels And Tires

E.g. **225/55 R 18 98 V**

225	tire width, mm
55	cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width), %
R	belt type: Radial
RF	type: RunFlat
18	wheel diameter, inches
98	load index e.g. 98 is equivalent to 750 kg
V	speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q	up to 160 km/h
S	up to 180 km/h
T	up to 190 km/h
H	up to 210 km/h
V	up to 240 km/h
W	up to 270 km/h

Choose a tyre appropriate for the maximum speed of your vehicle.

Refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Directional tyres

Directional tyres should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

Tightening torques

⚠ Warning

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

Caution

If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheel rims, tighten the wheel bolts manually at least for the first five turns.

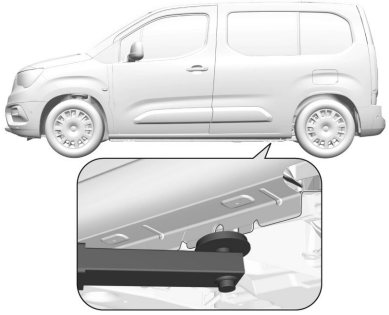
Depending on the wheel rim material, two different bolts are available.



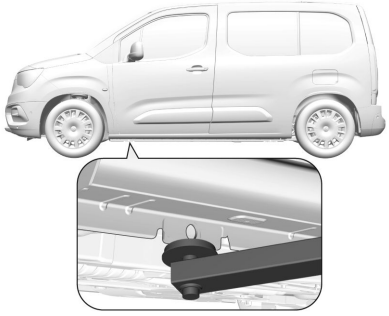
Tightening torque for alloy wheel rims is 115 Nm.



Tightening torque for steel wheel rims is 115 Nm.
Use the correct wheel bolts for the respective wheel rims.
The jacking positions shown refer to the use of lifting arms and accessory jacks used for changing winter/summer tires.



The rear arm position of the lifting platform is centrically under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



The front arm position of the lifting platform is centrically under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

Customer information

Declaration of conformity 279
Radio transmission systems..... 279
ICASA type approval numbers..... 279
Fuel Consumption And CO^2 Emissions 280
REACH..... 280
Event data recorders 280
Personal reference..... 280
Operating data in the vehicle..... 280
Technical data of the vehicle..... 281
Maintenance and repair activities... 281
ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system..... 282
Event Data Recorder (EDR) system..... 282
Comfort and infotainment functions..... 282
Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple® CarPlay®)..... 283
Online services - "Over-The-Air" connectivity..... 283
Online services based on contractual agreements..... 284
Protecting measures against cyber attacks..... 284
Applying legal Obligations and respective requirements..... 284
Data Use - Product Quality Improvement..... 286
European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis..... 286

Declaration of conformity

Note
Declarations of conformity for radio equipment

The relevant certificates are available on the brand website:
www.opel.com/conformity

Radio Transmission Systems

This vehicle has systems that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 by the United Kingdom. The manufacturers of the systems listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.

ICASA Type Approval Numbers

List of all Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) type approval numbers:
TA-2016/121, TA-2016/3261, TA-2017/2387, TA-2017/2745, TA-2013/430, TA-2017/1106, TA-2016/929, TA-2017/3180

Fuel Consumption And CO² Emissions

The fuel consumption and the range of the vehicle were not available at time of printing.

General information

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
The determination of fuel consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No. 715/2007 and No. 2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).
The specification of CO2 emissions is also a constituent of the directive.
The figures given must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle.
Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions.
All values are based on the EU base model with standard equipment.
The calculation of fuel consumption takes into account the vehicle's kerb weight, ascertained in accordance with the regulations. Optional equipment may result in slightly higher fuel consumption and CO2 emission levels and a lower maximum speed.

REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals.
Visit www.opel.com for further information and for access to the Article 33 communication.

Event data recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of your vehicle, some others assist you while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle.

You will find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in your vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook. These are also available in the general terms of sale of the vehicle, in the general terms of sale of connected services, or online on brand website.

Personal Reference

Each vehicle is identified by means of a unique chassis number. Further options, such as thevehicle's number plate, make it possible to trace data on the keeper or driver of the vehicle.
The data generated or processed by control units may therefore be personal, or be made personal under certain conditions. Depending on what vehicle data is available, conclusions may be drawn on information such as your driving behavior, your location or the route you travel, or on your usage behavior.

Operating Data In The Vehicle

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.

This data includes, for example:

- Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.

Technical Data Of The Vehicle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tire pressures, battery charge status).
- Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes).
- System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
- Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
- For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.
- Cyber-security events (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations).
- Exact mileage or timestamp of recorded events (detection of internal malfunctions, activation of specific systems, etc.), allowing to locate them in time.
- Dynamic data recorded few seconds before and after specific driving events, such as accidents, collisions or activations of Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS): driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, engine speed, selected ratio on the gearbox, pedals pressure), and potential very low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle (only if ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system is activated).

In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.

Maintenance And Repair Activities

When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary. The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.
This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also

use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.
Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) System

Depending on its level of equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with an ADAS Data Recorder system that continuously process pictures and driving data, and record them inside your vehicle when specific Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS) are triggered (e.g. Intelligent emergency braking assistance, interruption of a Semi-automatic lane changing, where applicable). This system aims to provide pieces of understanding for ADAS behaviour, by collecting data every time ADAS are triggered.
Concerned data is greyed low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle and dynamic driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, brake pressure pedal, blinker status, accelerator pedal position), both sampled every seconds just before and just after the event. Exact mileage and timestamping of the event are also recorded. Resolution of stored pictures is too low to allow recognition of faces, to read license plates, or to interpret panels on the roadside.
All this stored information can only be extracted from your vehicle near an approved repairer workshop, via a special equipment connected by wire to the OBD port. This can be done upon a request on your side for ADAS explanation, or in the context of a legal investigation concerning your vehicle. This system only aims to provide explanatory context of ADAS activations. Only activation of specific ADAS systems can trigger it ; this system is never directly triggered by detection of accidents or collisions without ADAS activation. In case where ADAS are deactivated, ADR system will not record any data.

Event Data Recorder (EDR) System

In addition, depending on country of sale and upon legal obligations, your vehicle may also be equipped with an Event Data Recorder system that records data in case of accident or collision, whatever the activation status of your ADAS systems. Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2022/545, EDR system is a legal obligation inside Europe Market, and in other countries bent to UN Regulation No 160 ; its purpose is to freeze driving data when accidents or collisions occur.
Contrary to the ADR system above described, pictures of the scene are never recorded by EDR system. Data can only be read through OBD port via a special equipment that law enforcement agencies may use to analyze the context of an accident involving your vehicle. Except in exceptional cases, repairers do not own this equipment.
For more information on the **Event Data Recorder**, please refer to the "**In case of emergency**" section of this document.

Comfort And Infotainment Functions

Comfort settings and personalised settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialized at any time. Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Seat and steering wheel position settings.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.
- Personalised settings such as the interior lighting.

You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and

telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
- Entered destinations.
- Data regarding the use of online services.

This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time. This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

Smartphone Integration (E.g. Android Auto® Or Apple® CarPlay®)

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematics system. Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematics system.
Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data. How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used. The ability the change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

Online Services - "Over-The-Air" Connectivity

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone). The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

Proprietary services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided.
Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorization,

for example in the case of a legal emergency call system, or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement.
You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include legally required functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third-party services

If you use online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers, these services are subject to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the third-party services provided by the service provider in question.

Online Services Based On Contractual Agreements

Your vehicle may disclose and receive data by "Over-The-Air" connectivity to perform services explicitly requested by a service subscriber. During the subscription process, we check by different means the legitimacy of the requestor considered as vehicle’s owner to activate services on the vehicle.
For more details on those services, please ask the service subscriber to provide the relative Terms and Conditions accepted. You can find them from the Brand Mobile app or the Brand website, after being connected with a Stellantis account.

Protecting Measures Against Cyber Attacks

Depending to the model, your vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber attack attempts or unexpected events for cybersecurity point of view . This system, when fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.
When cybersecurity events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abn ormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside your vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer’s in fra structures by "Over-The-Air" connectivity. Those log files are analyzed by the Manufacturer’s Security Operational Center (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronical components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.
The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cybersecurity measures settled inside vehicles.
It also directly participates to the securitization of your vehicle’s connectivity and allows the correct performance of online services activated on your vehicle . Ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing are described within the European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis (see below).

Applying Legal Obligations And Respective Requirements

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply.
Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independtly of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

eCall - Emergency Call

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.
This function, where operational, is provided through the Public Emergency service of each country where you are driving. It doesn't matter where you bought your vehicle or where it is registered.
In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone-call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective Public Emergency number (call to '112' inside Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. your exact location, the time of the accident, your vehicle's identification number and direction of travel). This information is only transmitted from your vehicle in the event of a serious accident ; it allows the Public Emergency Services to assess and manage your situation. The Public Emergency Services will act according to local legislation and its own operating procedures. Inside Europe, the 112- based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.
According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018.
The eCall system is only activated if your vehicle is involved in a serious accident. The rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when you are simply driving your vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering your car's position or monitoring your driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter

This SERVICE is provided for 15 years after the vehicule is fisrtly put into circulation.
In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance travelled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable). These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymized and aggregated way.
As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting Customer Care Center (contact information available on the brand website available for your country).

SLI - Speed Limit Information

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market.
Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June 2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles.
As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance"

system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, non-urban roads, and motorways/expressways/dual carriageways).
SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions doesn't not permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle). The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over-The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle.
As required by the "GSR V2 Regulations", this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle's settings available from the central touch screen. This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over-The-Air data transmission of current vehicle's position for accurate speed limit detection. Depending on the model of your vehicle, it may be possible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

Mileage disclosure to Car-Pass association

(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)
This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28th november 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020). It is provided lifetime, as long as Car-Pass association requests the data.
It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by belgian authorities to collect and control this data.
This mileage is collected over-the-air by Stellantis if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to Car-Pass association, upon request of this organism.
For more information, please refer to the Car-Pass privacy policy (https://www.car-pass.be/en/privacy-policy).

Data Use - Product Quality Improvement

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by STELLANTIS AUTO SAS as a car maker, your Vehicle Data (as defined in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the geolocation of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products. Further information on this, and ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy Of Stellantis

The Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles ("Privacy Policy") applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our

Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are authorized by a Customer to access and use the connected services.
This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016 and will help you understand better how we handle your information.
In this document, you will find some examples of how we process Personal Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy). If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how your data are processed, please send your request to: dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services.
It is also available at the following link: https://connected-vehicles-privacy.stellantis.com/

Index

Numerics

12V Battery 241
12V Battery Charger 226
12V Power Outlets 64

A

AC On-Off Control 94
Access to engine compartment 238
Active emergency braking 142
Active Emergency Braking (AEB) 182
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 177
AdBlue® 236
AdBlue® tank 276
Adding Coolant Fluid 240
Adding Washer Fluid 240
Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS) 1, 170–212
Advanced Grip Control 187
Air Conditioner Maintenance 245
Air Fan Speed Control 97
Air intake 245
Air vents 98
Airbag system 35
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 188
Anti-theft Alarm System 11
Anti-theft locking system 11
Antifreeze coolant 238
Ashtrays 76
Assist and SOS 214
Audible Pedestrian Warning System ... 11
Audio Settings 112
Automatic AC Control 96
Automatic Emergency Call (eCall) 214
Automatic Gearbox 143
Automatic light control 57

B

Bodywork-exterior care 254
Brake and clutch fluids 237
Brake assist 141
Brake Assist (BA) 186
Brake fluid 234
Brakes 139

C

Catalytic converter 149
Central Locking System 7
Charging 149
Charging cable 153
Charging status 161
Charging system (Electric) 149
Charging types 152
Checking Oil Level Engine 240
Cheking Fluids Level 233
Child restraint installation locations 42
Child restraints 39
Child surveillance mirror 24
Choosing The Media 110
Choosing The Radio Frequency 111
Cigarette lighter 76
Climate controls 94
Compatibility of Wheels And Tires 277
Connectivity 120
Courtesy Lights 60
Cruise control 175
Cupholders 62
Curtain Airbags 37

Customer information 1, 279–288
Customisation 109

D
Daytime Running Lights 59
Declaration of Conformity 279
Demisting/de-icing the rear screen and/or the door mirrors 100
Dimensions 259
Disconnecting - Connecting Battery .. 227
Doors 14
Drive modes 148
Drive Selector (Electric) 146
Driver's Attention Assistance System 205
Driving Mode Selector 148
Driving Tips 168

E
Electronic key system 6
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control system (TCS) 186
Emergency Signals 57
End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal 230
Engine 239
Engine compartment 238
Engine coolant 234
Engine data 260
Engine exhaust 148
Engine identification 258
Engine oil 233, 235, 276
Event data recorders 280
Exhaust filter 148
Exterior Lights 54

F
Fixed speed limiter 175
Fluid capacities 276
Foglights 248
Folding Front Seats 27
Folding Rear Seats 29
Front Airbag system 36
Front Armrest 28
Front Fog Lights 58
Front Lights 246
Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation .. 38
Front seat belts 33
Front Seat Position 25
Front storage 63
Fuel 149
Fuel consumption - CO2- Emissions . 280
Fuel level gauge 81
Fuel tank 276
Fuels Compatibility 149
Fuses 245

G
Glove Compartment 62
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting 57

H
Halogen headlights 246
Hazard Warning Lights 213
Head Restraints Position 24
Heated mirrors 23
Heated Seats 27
Heated steering wheel 50
Heated windscreen 21
High beam 55
High-voltage battery charge status 81
Hill Descent Control (HDC) 208
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 209
Horn 50
How To Use This Manual 2

I
Ignition switch 51
Immobilizer 14
Inductive charging 74
Info Displays 101
Infotainment system 1, 106–132
Inside Rearview Mirror 23
Instrument Cluster 80
Instrument Panel 78
Interior care 255
Interior features 62
Interior lights 250
Introduction 2
Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care 230

J
Jump starting 224

K
Key with foldaway key section 5
Keys 5

L
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 196
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 191
Lateral Airbags 37
Lead-acid starter batteries 224
LED headlights 248

License plate 258
Light replacement 245
Lighting controls 54
Link to Company App and Website 2
Load compartment 65

M
Making Emergency Call 214
Manual Front Seats 25
Manual transmission 145
Matrix-LED headlights 59, 60
Maximum AC On-Off Control 96
Maximum Windshield Demist-Defrost Control 97
Memorizing A Radio Station 111
Menu 106
Mirrors 22
Multimedia Pro 126
Multimedia system 114

N
Navigation 118

O
Odometer 80
Outside temperature 76
Overhead console 74

P
Parking Brake 140
Parking Lights 58
Parking sensors 200
Passenger side camera 190
Periodic checks 233
Phone 120, 131
Power button 51
Power flow 82
Power Windows 19
Profiles 108
Propulsion Type 3

Q
Quick-Release Battery Clamp 227

R
Radio 110
Radio Remote Control Function 6
Reading Lights 61
Rear doors 14
Rear Doors Child Locks 16
Rear Fog Lights 58
Rear seat belts 33
Rear Seat Position 29
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 203
Rear window 19
Rear Window Demist-Defrost Control ..97
Rear window wiper and washer 53
Rearview Display Mirror 23
Recommended ISOFIX child seats 41
Recreational Towing 165
Refill AdBlue® (Exhaust Emission Fluid) 243
Refuelling In Emergency 228
Regenerative braking 142
Replacement keys 5
Replacing battery in electronic key 7
Reverse Lights 59

S
Safety messages 3
Screenwash fluid 235
Seat belt pretensioners 35
Seatback Storage 63
Seats 25
Selecting A Radio Station 111
Service Information 231
Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA) 189
Sliding Door Operation 17
Smartphone station 82
SOS Call Feature 214
Speed limiter 173
Speedometer 81
Starting and stopping the engine 133
Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery 225
Steering Wheel 50
Steering Wheel Adjustment 50
Steering Wheel Controls 50, 118
Steering wheel mounted paddle shifters 50
Stop & Start (ICE) 137
Sun visors 22
SunRoof 61
Surround Vision 197
Symbols keys 3

T
Tailgate Operation 18
Temperature Control 97
Temperature Synchronization Control . 98
Three-point seat belt 34

Tightening torques 277
Tire pressure 252
Tire Repair Kit 220
Tire Repair Procedure 221
Towing another vehicle 167
Towing the vehicle 165
Traffic Sign Assist (TSA) 209
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) 209
Trailer towing 164
Tread depth 252
Trip computer 81
Turn lights 56
Tyre chains 254
Tyre information label 258
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 211
Tyre safety information 251
Tyres and wheels 251

U

Updating The System 109
USB ports 123
USB Ports 64

V

Vehicle data 259
Vehicle identification number (VIN) ... 257
Vehicle loading 162
Vehicle maintenance 243
Vehicle storage 231
Vehicle to Load (V2L) 162
Voice Commands 118

W

Warning lights, gauges and indicators . 84
Warning triangle 215
Washer fluid 235
Wheel Changing Toolkit 215
Wheel covers 252
Wheel Installation 220
Wheel Removal 220
Widgets 83
Windows 19
Windscreen 21
Windscreen washer 53
Windscreen Wiper And Washer 51
Winter tyres 251
Wiper blade replacement 243



www.opel.com

Copyright by Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim, Germany.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. Opel Automobile GmbH reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information in this publication as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: May 2025, Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim.
Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

OCOMBEO2505en-1



